Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015

https://archive.org/details/romanceofguyofwa00zupi

The Romance of

Guy of Warwick.

EDITED FROM THE AUCHINLECK MS. IN THE ADVOCATES' LIBRARY, EDINBURGH, AND FROM MS. 107 IN CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,

BY

JULIUS ZUPITZA, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN, HONORARY MEMBER OF THE CAMBRIDGE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,

BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIII.

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY,
CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.

PR1119
E5
no. 42

226955

Extra Series.
XLII.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

TEMPORARY NOTICE.

For information about the two parallel Texts printed here (the one for the first, the other for the second time*), I beg to refer the reader to the Preface to my Edition of the Romance of Guy of Warwick, from the Paper MS. Ff. 2, 38, in the University Library, Cambridge (E. E. T. S., Extra Series xxv and xxvi, for 1875 and 1876), pp. v and vi. My warmest thanks are due to Dr. James A. H. Murray, who, having collated Turnbull's Edition with the Auchinleck MS. before me, was to be my co-editor throughout, but, on account of his Dictionary work, was obliged to withdraw after the first sheets were printed off. His collation, however, which he was so good as to send me, has been, and will continue to be, of great use to me. I must also add that the side-notes in this first Part are nearly all his.

I take this opportunity to repeat that I should be greatly obliged for any information as to the whereabouts of a complete copy of Copland's *Guy* (the British Museum one having lost its first twenty leaves), as well as of Cawood's *Guy*, and of a fragment 'printed in a thinner letter than W. de Worde's' (cf. Warton, ed. Hazlitt, II. 162).

J. Z.

Berlin, S. W., Kleinbeerenstr. 7:
Febr. 21, 1885.

* Cf. The Romances of Sir Guy of Warwick and Rembrun his Son. Now first edited from the Auchinleck MS. Edinburgh: printed for the Abbotsford Club. MDCCCXL. [The Editor was William B. D. D. Turnbull.]

Here ginneþ Sir Giȝ.

(AUCHINLECK MS. 107^{v}.)

Gij of Warwike.

[*The first leaf is wanting in the Auchinleck MS., and the story is here supplied from the French version, MS. Corpus Coll., Camb., leaf* 6, *collated with MS. Harleian* 3775, *leaf* 15.]

P uis cel tens ke deus fu nez
e establi crestienetez,
[1]multz des[1] auentures s*on*t auenues,
ke[2] a tuz ho*m*mes ne s*on*t pas[3] sues.
pur ceo deit l'em mult enq*ue*re, 5
e pener sei de bien fere,
e de [4]bons p*r*endre[4] esp*er*imentz,
de faitz, de diz as aunciens
q*u*i deuant nus esteient.
auent*ur*es beles lur aueneient, 10
pur ceo qu'il amoient u*er*ite,
tut dis fei e leaute.
De eus deit l'um bien souenir
e lur bons faitz dire e oir:
q*u*i mult out e ceo retient 15
souent m*u*lt sage deuient;
[5]ceo est tenu[5] a bele mestrie,
ki fait le sen e lest la folie.

De un counte uoloms parler 20
q*u*i m*u*lt fait[6] a preiser,
e de un son senescal
q*u*i pruz ert[7] e leal;
e de son fiz, un damoisel
q*u*i m*u*lt par ert gent e bel; 25
e com il amat une pu*c*ele,

[1]—[1] multes, *Harl.*
[2] Q*u*i [3] *omit.*
[4]—[4] aprendre bons
[5]—[5] il ceo tent ben.
[6] feseit
[7] esteit

Guye of Warrewik.

[*Caius MS.*, 107, *page* 1.]

SYTħ THE TYME þAT CRYST IHESU,
Thorougħ hys grace & ver*tu*, — Many old
Was in þis world bore
Of a mayd w*ith*owt hore,
And þe world crystendom
Among mankynd first becom,
Many adue*n*tures hath be wrouȝt — adventures,
þ*a*t aɫɫ men knoweth nouȝt.
Therfore mēn shuɫɫ herken blythe,
And it vndirstonde right swythe, — unknown as yet,
For they that were borne or wee
Fayre aduenturis hadden they;
For eu*er*e they louyd sothfastenesse,
Faith with trewthe and stedfastnesse.
Therfore schulde man witħ gladde chere
Lerne goodnesse, vndirstonde, and here: — are worth knowing.
Who myke it hereth and vndirstondeth it
By resou*n* he shulde bee wyse of witte;
And y it holde a fayre mastrye,
To occupye wisedom̄e and leue folye.
For why as of an Erle j shaɫɫ yow teɫɫe, — I will tell of an Earl,
How of hym it beefelle;
And of hys stewarde, withoute lesynge, — and his steward,
And of the stewarde soñe, a fayre yonge thynge, — and how the steward's son
That gentil was and fayre bee-seeñ,
And how he loued a mayden sheeñ, — loved the Earl's daughter,

la fylle au counte, ke m*u*lt ert bele.

C. 25. En engleterre un coens esteit,
en Warewik la cite maneit :
riches ert e de grant Foer[1],
queintes, sages, bon cheualer ; 40
riches ert de or e de argent,
de Dras, de seie, de vesselement,
de fortz chasteul[2], de riche citez ;
par tut le re*n*gne ert m*u*lt dotez.
n'i[3] aueit ho*m*me en tote la te*r*re 45
q*u*i uers li osaht[4] p*r*endre guerre,
ke par force toht[5] nel preist,
e en la[6] chartre nel meist.
bons cheualers m*u*lt ama,
riches douns souent lur dona ; 50
pur ceo fu cremu e dote,
e par tut le re*n*gne preise.
coens esteit de m*u*lt grant pris,
sires ert de tuit le pais ;
de oxeneford tut le honur 55
sue estoit a icel iour ;
de bukingh*a*m de[7] tut le counte
sire en tel[8] tens esteit clame.
C. 51. li coens roaud out a nun,
m*u*lt par esteit noble barun. 60
vne fylle auoit[9] sa mulier,
sa grant beaute ne puis conter :

[1] pouer
[2] chastels
[3] n'
[4] osat
[5] tost
[6] sa
[7] *omit.*
[8] cel
[9] out de

The Erles doughter, that was so bryghte,
And how he spoused that swete wyghte, — married her,
And how that he reynbrouñ beegate—
AH y kanne teH yow that— 30
And how he wente into wildernesse : [p. 2] — and went on his wanderings.
AH y canne teH yow as it ys.
A wysemañ it vnto vs seyd
That it wrote and in ryme it leyd.
I woH it not any longer coñceH, 35
But open the sentence as ye may fele.

In Englonde an Erle was wonnynge — The Earl owned Warwick,
In Warrewyke Citee, ryght as I fynde :
Ryche he was and grete of myght,
Erle he was, and a fuH stronge knygñt, 40
Riche of gold and of sylu*er* bothe, — and was very rich
Of clothes of gold and vesseH, withoute othe,
Of stronge castellis and riche Citees : — and powerful.
Thorugh aH Englond preised he was.
In aH Englond ne was ther none 45
That durste in wrath ayenste hym gooñ.
Good knyghtis he loued y-wys,
And freely he gaue them of hys,
Therfore welbelouyd he was,
And grettly doubted in eu*er*y place. 50
Erle he was of grete price :
AH that contree tho was hys ; — He was lord of Oxford
Of oxenford and aH that contrey
He was gou*er*noure at that day ;
Of Bokyngh*a*m, and of aH that shyre, 55 — and of Buckingham.
He was klepyd both lord and syre.
That Erle Rohaude hyght, — He was called Rohaud.
Baroun he was of grete myght.
A dought*er* he had of hys wyue, — He had a daughter
Hyr grete beaute y can not dyscryue : 60
For the fairest men chesen hir y-wys. [p. 3] — who was very beautiful,
That y you telle, sothe it is.

pur la plus bele le unt choisie.
ore est reisun ke l'em uus die
vn petitet de sa grant[1] beaute : 65
le viz out blank e colore,
lunge, traitet[2], e auenaunt ;
bele buche, e nes bien seaunt,
les euz uairs e le chief bloi ;
de li ueer uus semblast poi : 70
bien faite de cors, de bele estat*ur*e,
tant p*ar* ad duce la reguardure.

corteise ert e enseignee,
de tuz artz ert enseignee[3] : 80

ses mestres esteient venuz
de tulette[4], tut[5] blaunks chanuz,

q*u*i la ape*r*noient de astrenomie,
de arsmetic[6], de Geumetrie.

m*u*lt par ert fere de corage :
p*u*r ceo ke ele fud tant sage,
C. 71. ducs e countes la req*ue*roient ; 95
de [7]m*u*ltz de[7] te*r*res p*u*r li[8] venoient,
mes nul de eus am*er* ne uoleit,
pur ceo ke tant bele esteit.

[1] *omit.*
[2] treitis
[3] endoctrinee
[4] toulette [5] touz
[6] arsmetrike
[7—7] mute; *read* multes
[8] luy

Of hir beaute yet a litell wighte :
Withh a faire visage louely in sighte,
Hir skynne was white of brighte coloure ; 65
Bodied wele and of grete valour ;
Large tresses, and wele bee-comyng,
Browes bente and nose weH sittyng ;
The mouthe so wele sittyng ywys,
To kisse it ofte it was grete blys ; 70
Withh grey eyeñ and nekke white,
Hir to see it was grete delite.
Hir bodye weH sette and shaply ; handsome,
By thoo daies ther was nōōn suche truely.
Gentil she was and as demure 75
As girfauk, or fawkon to lure,
That oute of muwe were drawe ;
So faire was nooñ, in sothe sawe.
She was therto curteys and free ywys, and accomplished.
And in the .vii. artes weH lerned, withoute mys. 80
AH the .vii. art*is* she kouthe weH,
Noon better that eu*er*e mañ herde teH.
Hir maisters were thider coṁe She had famous teachers from Toulouse [*French text* Toledo],
Oute of Tholouse aH and soṁe ;
White and hoore aH they were, 85
Bisy they were that mayden to lere ;
And they hir lerned of astronomye, who taught her all the seven arts.
Of Ars-meotrik, and of geometrye.
Of Sophestrie she was also witty,
Of Rethoric, and of other clergye ; 90
Lerned she was in musyke ; [p. 4]
Of clergie was hir noon like.
She was a woman of grete corage,
Wise and faire and of gaye parage.
To haue hir to wif he did hir sende 95
Erles, Dukes, fro the worldes ende ; Dukes and earls
And nooñ of theim haue she wolde, wooed her in vain.
For that she was so faire holde.

felice fu la bele appellee :
pur sa beaute fu m*u*lt amee ; 100
de totes beautez fu ele la flur,
tant bele ne ert a icel iour.
ki totes t*er*res dunc serchast
[1] ne vne tant bele n'i[1] trouast :
q*u*i tote sa beaute countereit 105
trop grant demorance i freit.
C. 83. de la pucele lerrum ester,
[2—2] del [2]e de[2] senescal uodrum parler,
[3] Qi ke[3] mult ert corteis e sage :
ho*m*me fu de mult grant parage ; 110
[4] *omit.* riches ert e de m*u*lt[4] grant ualur ;
en icel tens ni out meillur,
[5—5] Ni qi [5]ne ke[5] fuht tant des armes p*r*ise,
kar en mainte terre aueit este
pur sun pris enhaucier ; 115
[6—6] feseit pur ceo [6]fait il[6] m*u*lt a loer.
en Walingeford nez estoit,
tuit le pais a li apendoit :
pur ceo fud il nobles e fier ;
[7] n' [8] sa (= ça) tant bon n'i[7] aueit de ca[8] la mier, 120
ne ki seruist sun sei*n*gnur,
tuz iours a si grant honur.
AUCHINLECK MS. 108r. col. 1. His lord he serued treweliche
C. 93. In al þing manschipeliche.
þer was non erl i*n* Inglond 125
þat to ȝeines hi*m* durst stond,
Bot, ȝif he wold be wiþ hi*m* at on,
He wald do nimen him anon,
& wiþ strengþe hi*m* nim wolde,
þei he to Scotlond suwe hi*m* scholde. 130
His lordis honour he held worþschipliche,
& defended it wele & hardiliche ;
[1] MS. was þer nas[1] kni[ȝ]t in Inglonde
þat wiþ wretþe durst hi*m* atstonde.

Felice .la bele hir name is :
Moche she was belouid ywis ; 100
Of aH faire she was the floure,
Nooñ so faire in halle nor boure
As she was ; who that sought̄e
So faire to fynde, for nought̄e he wrought̄e :
He that aH hir beaute write wolde, 105
To longe tarying make he sholde.

Nowe we shuH leue of hir here,
And telle you forthe of our matiere.
Speke we schuH of the Stywarde :
WeH true he was, and high̄te Sywarde. 110
This Syward was sliḡhe and wise,
Riche of kynde, and of grete prise :
In his tyme nooñ better was,
For of grete worship was noon in his caas.
Of armes he had been chief on grounde, 115
And therof preised in many a londe ;
For that he wolde preysed bee,
He did him bee knowen in many a contree.
In Walyngforde he was borne.
AH that Contree to him was sworne. 120
A swiche noble man he was, [p. 5]
On this half the see noon suche was,
That serued his lorde so truely,
And in aH thinges so worshipfully.
Ther was noon Erle in aH that londe 125
That his lorde durste withstonde,
Bot he with̄ loue it amended anooñe,
Hastely he[1] wolde vpoñ him gooñe,
And with strengthe hym haue wolde,
Though̄ he therfor in to Scotlonde sholde. 130
AH his lordes londe weH and truely
He maynteyned it fuH worshipfully ;
That nooñ was so hardy a mañ,
That with wronge durste com̄e than.

Her name was Felice la Belle.

None so fair.

The Earl's Steward, Syward by name,

was a man of great valour,

a native of Wallingford.

This steward served his lord faithfully; no earl in England durst withstand him.

[1] MS. we.

He defended his lord's honour,

against every knight.

þei a man bar an hundred pounde,
Opon him, of gold y-grounde,
þe[r] nas man i*n* al þis londe
þat durst him do schame no schonde, 140
þat bireft him worþ of a slo,
So gode pais þer was þo.

C. 110. Turnb. p. 2, l. 19. þilke steward hadde a sone
Trewe & wise atte frome;
Al folk he dede him loue, 145
For þat noman schuld him schoue;
& riche ȝiftes ȝiuen he wold,
For þat he schuld be fre yhold.
þerl Rohaud he serued þo,
As he schuld his kinde lorde do; 150
þerl him loued swiþe dere,
Ouer al oþer þ*a*t þer were.
Of his coupe serue he hi*m* dede,
He was preysed to hi*m* i*n* eue*r*ich stede:
þerl michel him worþschipede, 155
& for his fader loue to hi*m* clepede.

C. 123. Gij of Warwike his name was,
In court non better beloued þ*er* nas,
So he was among gret lordinges,
Litel & michel i*n* al þinges. 160
Gentil he was & of michel miȝt,
Ouer al oþ*er* feirest bi siȝt[1]:
Al þai wonderd strongliche,
For his feirhed was so miche;
So mani godenes in him were, 165
Al him preysed þ*er* y-fere,
Of bordis & turnament y-wis,
Kniȝtes to hauen & holden of p*ris*.

MS. 108r. col. 2. **C. 139.** Turnb. p. 3, l. 42. Gij a forster fader hadde,
þat hi*m* lerd & him radde 170

[1] MS. bisiȝt

Fastenned he had suche a pees, 135
That neu*er*e sithe noon better was:
Though men did bere an hundred pounde, — A man loaded with gold was safe from all attack,
Vpon him, of penyes rounde,
There shulde not bee founde in all the londe
A theef that him wolde hurte ne shonde, 140
Nor take fro him the worthe of a sloo: — owing to the good peace he enforced.
So good pees there was thoo.
That same Stywarde had a soñe — This steward had a son, true and wise,
Wise and curteys at Frome;
All men him did loue sothely, 145
Ther was noon that him wolde shonye.
To All men yiftes yiue he wolde, — beloved by all.
Therfore so curteis he was holde.
The Erle Rohaud he serued thoo,
His kynde Lorde, so mote y goo. 150
The Erle him loued hertly and dere, [p. 6]
Oue*r* all other that with him were.
Of his coupe he him serue Didde,
And p*r*iuyest with him in eu*er*y stede:
The Erle Rohaud mikel him worshipped, 155 — He served Earl Rohaud, and was his cup-bearer.
And for his fader loue thoo farther him cleped.
Guye of Warrewik his name was, — His name was Guy of Warwicke.
In all the courte nōōn more honoured nas:
Of knyghtes and of grete lordinges,
Of more and lasse, in all thinges. 160
Mikell he was, and of grete mighte, — He was gentle and strong,
And fairest of all other be sighte:
All him behelde wondirly,
His fairenesse was so grete truly; — beautiful and good.
So many goodnesses in him were: 165
All him preised that were there.

Guye a foster fader hadde,
That him lerned and also redde 170 — Guy was taught

Of wodes & riuer & o*þer* game :
Herhaud of Ardern was his name.
He was hende & wele y-tauȝt,
Gij to lern forȝat he nauȝt ;
Michel he couþe of hauk & hounde, 175
Of estriche faucou*n*s of gret mou*n*de.

C. 143. It was opon a Pentecost day yteld, 185
þerl a gret fest held
At Warwike in þat cite,
þat þan was y-won to be.
þider cam men of miche miȝt,
Erls & barouns boþe apliȝt, 190
Leuedis & maidens of gret mou*n*de,
þat in þe lond wer y-founde.
Eueriche maiden ches hir loue
Of kniȝtes þat wer þider y-come,
& eu*e*rich kniȝt his leman 195
Of þ*a*t gentil maiden wiman ;
When þai were fro chirche y-come,
þer aliȝt mani a noble gome.
þerl to þe mete was sett,
Gij stode forn him i*n* þat flett, 200
þat was þe steward sone,
þerl to serue it was his wone.
Turnb. p. 4, l. 71. To him he cleped Gij,
& him hete & comandi
þat he in to chau*m*ber went, 205
& grete wele þat maiden gent,

Of wode, of Ryuer, of aƚƚ game:
Heraude of Arderne was his name. Sir Herhaud of Ardern.
He was curteys, and weƚƚ taugħte,
Guye he lerned and forgate him naugħte;
Mikeƚƚ he kouthe of haukes and houndes,
Of Ostours, of Faukoñs of grete moundes.
Aƚƚ that wolde of him ougħte craue,
Witħ good wille they shulde it haue.
To parsoñs and to pouer knygħtes
Ofte he wolde yiue riche yiftes;
And to other ofte yiue he wolde
Palfrey or stede, siluer and golde,
Euery manƀ after his good dede [p. 7]
Of Guye vnderfangeth his mede.

On Witsondaye called Pentecoste On Pentecost day the Earl held a great feast,
The Erle helde a grete feste
In Warrewik, that good Citee,
As it euer was wonte to bee.
There were Erles, baroñs, and knygħtes, to which came earls and barons,
And many a mañ of grete mygħtes;
Ladies and maydeñs of grete renowñ, and ladies of renown.
The grettest desired therʼ to bee bownƀ.
Many a mayde there chese hir loue anone Every maiden chose her love,
Of knygħtes that thider were com̄e,
And the knygħtes also theirʼ ƚemans there and every knight his leman.
Of the maidens that there were.
Whanƀ they fro chirche were com̄e,
In to the halle they yode fuƚƚ sone.
Whanƀ the Erle to the mete sette was,
Guye stode before him in that plaas, Guy stood before the Earl to serve,
He that was Sywardes soñe,
To whom the Erle grete loue had nom̄e.
The Erle cleped to him Guye,
To him gan sey and commaunded on higħe,
That he in to the chambre wente and was sent to serve the Earl's daughter.
And grete weƚƚ his dougħter that was so gente;

& þat he schuld þat ich day
Serue wele þat feir may.

C. 159. Gij him answerd freliche :
'Sir, ichil wel bleþeliche.' 210
In a kirtel of silk he gan hi*m* schrede,
Into chau*m*ber wel sone he ȝede.
Þe kirtel bicom hi*m* swiþe wel,
To Amenden þ*er* on was neu*er* a del ;
Þe maidens biheld him feir & wel, 215
For þat he was so gentil.

C. 161. Gij on his knes sone hi*m* sett,
& on hir fader half he hir grett,
& seyd he was þider sent
To serue hir to hir talent. 220

MS. 108v. col. 1.
C. 167. Felice answerd þan to Gij
'Bieus amis, molt grame*r*ci.'
& seþþe sche asked hi*m* in þe plas
Whennes he cam, & what he was.
'Mi fader,' he seyd, 'hat Suward, 225
þat is þi fader steward,
þat wiþ him me haþ y-held
& forþ y-brouȝt, God him for-ȝeld !'

Turnb. p. 5, l. 97. 'Artow,' sche seyd, 'Suward sone,
þat of al godenes haþ þe wone ?' 230
Gij stode stille & seyd nouȝt.
Wiþ þat was the wat*er* forþ brouȝt :
þai sett hem to mete anon,
Erl, baroun, sweyn & grom.
¶ Gij was bisy þat ich day 235
To serue wele þat feir may.
þat day Gij dede his miȝt
To serue þritti maidens briȝt ;
Al an-amourd on hi*m* þai were,
& loued Gij for his feir chere. 240
þer of no ȝaf he riȝt nouȝt,
Al anoþ*er* it was his þouȝt :

And that he shulde at mete that Daie
Bee willyng' to serue that faire mayē.
'Sir,' seide Guy fuꝗ freely,
'I doo youre heste fuꝗ blithely.' 210
Witꝗ a silken kirteꝗ began him shrede, Guy arrayed him blithely,
And in to the Chambre thañ he yede.
The kirteꝗ so weꝗ sitting' it was, [p. 8]
It to amende noo nede it has;
Guy was so weꝗ shape and gentille, 215
The maidens him behelde witꝗ good wille.
On knees before Felice he him sette, and repaired to Felice,
And on hir fader behalue he hir grette,
And seide how he was thider sentte
To serue hir to hir talentte. 220
Felice answerd ayene to Guye,
'Beaux amye, moult gram*er*cye.' who asked who his father was.
And than she asked him in that place
Where that he borne was.
And Guye seide, 'my fader is called Sywarde, 225 He answered 'Syward, thy father's steward.'
That is youre faders Stywarde;
Many a daye he hatꝗ me witꝗ him holde,
And forthe me bredde, god him foryelde!'
'Bee ye,' she seide, 'Sywardes soñe, She praised Syward.
That aꝗ goodnesse hatꝗ in wone?' 230
Guye stode stille and spake noughte.
Witꝗ that the water was fortꝗ broughte:
She did wesshe and wente to mete anone
And so did knyghꝗt, squier, and grome.
Aꝗ his mighte he did that daie 235 Guy acquitted himself so well
To serue weꝗ that faire maye.
Wele to serue he did his myghte
Moo than thirty maidens brighte; that thirty maidens fell in love with him.
That aꝗ they anamoured were
On Guye for his faire chere. 240
And he therof rekked noughte,
For vpon another was his thoughte:

On Felice þat was so briȝt,
Gij hir loued wiþ al his miȝt;
So michel sche was in his þouȝt, 245
þat neye he was to deþ y-brouȝt,
He gan to wepe & sore siche,
& biment him wel reweliche;

& grete wonder he hadde y-wis 251
þat Felice so feir a creatour is.
Ac he no dar his loue keþe,
No sen hir wel vnneþe,
He is in so gret þouȝt, 255
His *con*seyl wil he schewe nouȝt.
C. 187. Turnb. p. 6, l. 123. Into þe maidens chau*m*ber he is y-go,
At Felice he tok his leue þo,
& in his way he goþ apliȝt.
Vnto his chamber he went ful riȝt, 260
& wepe & made grete wo,
For he loued þat maiden so.
His men axed him on hy,
Whi þat he was so sori?
He hem answerd sone anon, 265
þat swiche iuel is comen him on
MS. 108v. col. 2. þat he weneþ his liif forgon,
Bote no tit him neu*er* non.
C. 207. In þe court biment was Gij;
Mani man for him was sori, 270
For he was won to serue he*m* wel,
& ȝif hem mani a iuwel.
Now is Gij in gret tempest,
Sorwe he makeþ wiþ þe mest
Of Felice þat feir may; 275
For hir loue he sorweþ ay.

Ond Felice with the nebbe so brighte [p. 9]
He kaste his loue with all his mighte;
That he ne wiste what to doo, 245
Hir loue werked him suche woo.
He wepte with mayne slilye,
And mourned in hym self softelye,
That he euere shulde see
Hir brighte rodye, hir faire blee. 250
Moche wonder he hath ywis,
That she so faire a creatur is.
He durste not to hir his loue kithe,

But he cared only for Felice, whom he loved to death. But he dared not to confess his thoughts.

Bot to his chambre wente right swithe:
Withoute any leue takyng of Felice thoo,
Oute of his chambre he did goo. 260

When he took leave of Felice, he went to his chamber sick of love.

Than asked of him his meyne,
Why that he so heuy wolde bee.
Guye answerd theim anone, 265
Seying that sikenesse is come him vpon,
Wherthurgh his lif he weneth to forgoo,
And neuere helth to haue of his woo.
In the courte mikel bemened is Guy:
For him was many a man sory; 270
For he was wonned to serue theim wele,
And to theim yiue many a ieowele.
Nowe is Guy in grete tempeste,
Sorowe he maketh with the moste;
For loue that he had to the maye 275
His sorowe encressed nyghte and daie.
Nowe is Guye so euyll bee stadde,
Hym self he helde for a man madde.

They asked him why he grieved so. He was lamented in the Court. Ever he sorrowed for Felice.

& grete wonder he haþ y-wis
þat him so hard bifallen is; 280
He acursed þe time þat [he] hir say,
Felice wiþ hir eyȝen gray,
Hir gray eyȝen, hir nebbis schene:
'For hir mi liif is miche in wene.
Turnb. D. 7. l. 149. To hir ichil tellen al mi þouȝt, 285
Whi þat icham in sorwe brouȝt.
Tide me gode oþer qued,
Y nil it hele for no nede,
Riȝt to hir that y ne go
& schewe hir of mi miche wo. 290

¶ Ac now to hir schewen y nille;
Allas, wreche, hou may i duelle?
295

For mi lordes douhter sche is,
& ich his nori, forsoþe y-wis;
Þerfore ich auȝt him trewebe bere,
& neuer more him to dere. 300
ȝif ich hir loued, & it wist he,
& he miȝt ouer-take me,
He wald anon mine heued of smite,
Oþer heye hong, for that wite,
Oþer hewe me wiþ swerdes kene, 305
ȝif ich hadde don him þat tene.
Allas, wreche, what may y do?
Y loue þing y no may com to!'
C. 191. ¶ Now is Gij in sorwe ybrouȝt;
Of his liif nis him nouȝt. 310

He went and trent his bed opon,
So man þat is wo bigon;

For the sorowe that him befallen is, [p. 10]
Ofte he bemeneth̄ him self y-wis:
'In wicked peyne sey y may,
That y ne may beholde hir eyen̄ gray,
Hir graye eyen̄, hir nebbe so shene;
For hir my lif is in a wene.
To hir y shaH telle my thoughte,
For whom y am in this sorowe broughte.
What so euere com̄e to me good or ylle,
I woH it noo lenger concele for to spille.
Bot streight̄ to hir woH y goo,
And in hir mercy y shaH me doo;
And if she woH, she may me slee,
And hir wille doo with̄ me.
Yf I my sorowe hir doo not telle,
Allas, wrecche, how shaH y duelle?
Allas, wrecche, that me is woo!
Ine wote what y may doo:
For my lordys Dough̄ter she is,
And y his norry ywis;
Therfor̄ the more beholdinḡ to him y bee,
And neuere noo-wher̄ his harme to see.
If y hir loued and wite migh̄t he,
And therwith̄ he may take me,
Brenne he me wolde, or the hede of smyte,
Or high̄e hange for that dispite,
Or aH to-hewe with̄ swerdes kene,
And y him did suche a tene.
Allas, y wrecche! what may y doo?
I loue hir that is my foo.'
Nowe is Guye in so moche sorowe brough̄te, [p. 11]
That of his lif he rekketh̄ nough̄te;
Nor he woteth̄ what he may doo,
For the grete sorowe that com̄eth̄ him to.
He wende, he trende his bedde vpon̄,
As man̄ that is woo bee gon̄;

Guy cursed the time he saw Felice.

He would go and tell her all:

but he feared her father, who was his lord,

and might doom him to destruction for his presumption.

He threw himself on his bed.

He no may sitt no stonde, 315
No vnneþe drawen his onde;
Turnb. p. 8, l. 175. Rest, no take slepeinge,
Mete ete, no drinke dringe;
MS. 109r. col. 1. No may him noman *com*forti,
Bot euer his song is wo & wi. 320
In so gret þouȝt was he þo,
& so gret sorwe toke him to,
Leuer hi*m* wer walk & wende,
& dye i*n* trewe loue bende.
¶ Þus [Gij] lay in grete turment 325
Til þat þe fest was al to-went.
Swiche an iuel is on hi*m* fast,
Þat he no may it of hi*m* cast;
He no wil noman his care schewe.
His sorwes ben euer aliche newe, 330
Þat he no may his loue haue,
Grete strengþe him doþ wiþ-drawe.
Þer-fore he seyd, 'ichil hir schewe,
My peyne is eu*er* aliche newe;
Of al mi sorwe nis hir nouȝt, 335
Ich wold ich were to deþ y-brouȝt.
Bitide me iuel oþer gode,
Ichil it held in mi mode;
& ȝif sche wil, sche may me spille,
Ac for al þat leten y nille.' 340

C. 215. Now is Gij to court y-go,
[1] *As* illegible in MS. As[1] man þat is ful of wo,
Turnb. p. 9, l. 201. & on his knes he him dede
Bifor Felice in þat stede,
& to hir he spac wel euen 345
Wiþ a wel queynt steuen,
& seyd, 'Felice þe feir, m*er*ci!
For godes loue & our leuedi,
Þat y þe no finde mi dedliche fo,
For godes loue herken me to! 350

He ne may sitte, nor he may stonde,
Nor vnnethe vnto him drawe his honde,
Ne reste take of any slepinge,
Nor ete mete, nor drinke drinke;
Nor may noo man̄ him comforte,
Bot eu*er*e is songe is woo with̄ disporte.

No one could comfort Guy.

Thus lyueth̄ Guy in grete turmente
Till̄ the feest was ouer wente;
Afterward he bethough̄te is
That he doth̄ as the man wyse,
That he shall̄ loue bot strength̄e haue
Him self whan him luste to with̄-drawe.
Than̄ thinketh̄ he, good it is hir to shewe
The peynes that for hir greueth me newe:
And she of my sorowe knoweth̄ nough̄te,
To ende y wolde my lif were brough̄te.
Bee-tide me yuel either goode,
I woll̄ not lyue in this mode;
Bot y shall̄ to hir goo,
And in hir m*er*cy y shall̄ me doo.
Yf that she woll̄, she may me spille;
Bot for all̄ that y ne leue wille.

So he lay in torment till the feast was over.

At last he resolved to speak to Felice,

betide him what might.

GUYE IS to courte com̄e,
As man that is in sorowe nom̄e.
On knees before Felice he hym didde, [p. 12]
And sorowfully seide in that stede,
All̄ with̄ quakyng steuene;
Thus he seide, and spake full̄ euene:
'Felice the faire, for godd*is* loue, mercy!
On me haue reuthe for our̄ lady,
That y ne fynde the my full̄ foo,
For loue y you praye, herken̄ me to.

He came to court

and fell on his knees before Felice,

beseeching her favour.

No longer hele y nille,
Al that soþe tellen y wille.

355

Þou art þe þing þat y most ȝerne,
Fro þe no may mine hert terne;
Opon al oþ*er* y loue þe,
Y no may it lete ded to be. 360
Vnder heuen no þing nis,
Noiþer gode no qued y-wis,
[1] so MS.; read *it*. Þat y for þe don y[1] nolde,
To lete þat liif don y wolde.
Þou art mi liif, mi ded y-wis, 365
Wiþouten þe haue y no blis;
MS. 109r. col. 2. Y loue þe and tow nouȝt me,
Y dye for þe loue of þe.
Bot þou haue m*er*ci on me,
For sorwe ichil me self sle, 370
For wistestow þe heuinisse,
Þe sorwe and þe sorinisse,
Turnb. p. 10, l. 227. Þat me is on niȝt and day
(Bi trewe loue siggen ich it may)—
& tow it miȝt wiþ eyȝen se, 375
Þou wost haue m*er*ci on me.'

C. 219. Felice þe feir answerd þo,
'Artow þis, Gij, so mot þou go,
Þe steward sone Suward,
Ich wene þou art a fole musard! 380
When þou of loue me hast bisauȝt,
Al to fole-hardy þou art y-tauȝt.
Wele þou holdest me for a fole;
Þou art y-tauȝt to a liþer scole,
& icham þi lordes douhter biname; 385
Þan dostow him wel michel schame,

Hense forewarde y woH not hele
The grete loue, that me dothh fele :
Shewe y muste the peyne and sorowe
That y haue for you euyne and morowe.
Ye bee that thynge for whom) y mo*ur*ne, 355
Fro you ne may my herte to*ur*ne :
Ou*er*e aH thinge y muste you loue,
Whether it to*ur*ne benethe or aboue,
Bot that y shaH loue you aye,
Whiles that y lyue maye. 360
Vnder heuen) noo thinge is,
Were it good or yuel ywis,
That y for the doo it [ne] wolde,
My lif to lese thoughh y shulde.
Ye bee my lif and my dethh y-wis : 365
Withoute you loste is aH my blis.
WeH more y loue you than me :
Deye y shaH for loue of you pardee,
Bot thou haue m*er*cy on) me,
Myself y shaH for sorowe slee. 370
Yf ye wiste the heuynesse,
The grete peyne, and the sorowfulnesse,
That y haue for you nyghte and daye [p. 13]
(Withh true loue y it saye)—
And you it mighte witterly see, 375
I trowe ye wolde haue m*er*cy on me.'
Felice to him answerde thoo,
'Telle me, Guye, if ye bee so
The Stywardis soñe that highte Sywarde,
I holde you for a fole musarde. 380
Nowe thou me haste of loue besoughte,
To fole-hardy thou art in thoughte,
Or thou me takest for a fole.
Thou art taughte of wikked scole,
Whiles y am thy lordes Doughter by name ; 385
Me thinkethh thou doost him mikel shame,

[col. 2]

There was nothing he would not do for Felice.

Unless she would have mercy he would slay himself.

Felice called Guy foolhardy,

aspiring to the love of his lord's daughter.

When þou of loue bi-sechist me
þat y schold þi leman be.
No fond y neuer man me so missede,
No me so of loue bede, 390
Noyþer kniȝt no baroun,
Bot þou þat art a garsoun,
& art mi man, & man schalt be.
Yuel were mi fairhed sett on þe,
& y swiche a grome toke, 395
& so mani grete lordinges for-soke.
Erls, doukes of þe best
In þis world, & þe richest,
Turnb. p. 11, l. 253. Me haue desired apliȝt,
þat neuer of me hadde siȝt. 400
þat wer gret deshonour to me!
Al to loþ mi liif me schuld be.
Al to fole-hardi þou were,
When þou me of loue bisouȝtest here.
C. 224. Bi mi trewþe y schal þe swere, 405
Schal y mi fader þe tiding bere,
þou worþest to-hewen, o*þer* for-do,
(Bi þe be warned o*þer* mo)
O*þer* wiþ wilde hors to-drawe,
For þi foly, & þat wer lawe, 410
MS. 109v. col. 1. & oþer schul be warned bi þi dede,
& her lordinges þe more drede.
Go heþen,' sche seyd, '& vp arise,
& cum nam-more i*n* mi p*ur*pris!'
C. 235. ¶ Wel sorwefuliche went Gij 415
In to his chaumber al dreri:
Gij in to his chau*m*ber gan to gon,
& schett him þer in anon.
þer in he made sorwe anouȝ,
& his cloþes al to-drouȝ. 420
Vnder heuen nas *þat* it ne miȝt haue rewþe
Of his sorwenes & of his trewþe.

Whan thou of loue besechest me,
And that y shulde thy lemman bee.
Ne fonde y neu*e*re man that so moche mysseide,
Nor that so folisshe of loue me preide, 390
Neither knyghte, Erle, ne baron;
Bot thou art bot a garson, 'Should I take you, a mere garsoun,
That art my man, and shuldest bee.
Euyh were my beaute besette on the,
Yf y a grome loued and toke, 395
And so many faire knyght*is* forsoke. forsaking earls, dukes, and lords?
Erles, Dukes, of ah the beste,
And of ah the worlde the richeste
Ou*e*re ah men desired me a plighte,
Suche as on me neu*e*re had sighte; 400
Dispreised to moche y shuld bee That were dishonour!
To leue ah theim and take the!
Ah to grete hardiship thou thoughtest, [p. 14]
Whan thou of loue me besoughtest.
By my moder soule y the swere, 405 If I should tell my father
And y to my fader this tyding bere,
To slee the or the vtterly fordoo, you would be hewn in pieces
(By the shuh bee warned other moo)
Or with wilde hors ah to-drawe,
For thy folie that were the lawe. 410 for your folly.

Goo hense swithe! vp arise, Go hence, and come no more!'
And come nomore here in this wise!'
Fuh sorowfully thense gooth Guy 415 Guy went sorrowfully home,
Home to his Inne ah sory:
In to his Chambre he is goon,
And beshette him therin ah aloon. shut himself in, and rent his clothes.
There he made sorowe and sorowe enough:
His clothes he rende, his heer he drough. 420

Of loue he bi-ment strongliche
For whom þat he loued so miche:
Turnb. p. 12, l. 279. 'Loue,' he seyd, 'slake now mi sore 425
þat is dedeliche, as y seyd ore.
Loue of þis ȝongling
Makeþ me iuel fonding.
Loue, bring me of þis wodenisse,
& bring me in to sum lisse, 430
For to reste me aþrowe,
þat y miȝt meseluen knowe.
Sore me meneþ, for me smert,
Miche care is in mine hert,
Michel ich am y-cast of miȝt 435
Al to fer wiþ vnriȝt.
Loue me doþ to grounde falle,
þat y ne may stond stef wiþ alle.
Loue doþ min cloþes done,
& after me clepeþ 'wreche' sone. 440
Hou schal y liue? hou schal y fare?
Hou long schal y liuen in care?
Leuest þing me were to dye,
& ich wist bi wiche weye.
Deþ,' he seyd, 'wher artow so long? 445
þou makest me y may nouȝt stond.
þou makest me out of þe way to gon;
Whi ne comestow to feche me anon?
Worþi ich were ded to be:
Y loue þing þat loueþ nouȝt me. 450
Turnb. p. 13, l. 305. Herkeneþ now hou seiþ þe wise:
Y schal ȝou schewe bi þis asise.
For a fole he schal him held
þat takeþ more þan he may weld.'
MS. 109v. col. 2. To a fenestre þan Gij is go, 455
C. 269. Biheld þe castel, þe tour also.
'Tour,' he seyd, 'feir artow bisett!
In þe is þat maiden bischett

Of loue he bemeneth̄ him strongely,
For whom he hath̄ sorowe gretly:

Pitifully Guy moaned:

'Loue, a-slake me of this wodenesse,
And respite graunte me more or lesse, 430
That y migh̄t reste me a throwe,
Wherthurgh̄ my sorowe may ou*er*e blowe.
To farre y am kaste in vnmygh̄te,
My herte is heuy, and noo-thing lig̃hte.

'Love drives me mad;

I do not know myself;

I cannot stand upright.

What shal̄ y doo? how shal̄ y fare?
I may not lyue longe in this kare.
Allas, deth̄! what art thou?
Vnnethe may y stonde now:
Deth̄! com̄e forth̄, and take me anoon); 445
For loste been) my wittes eu*er*ych̄ oon).
Dede y deserue for to bee, [p. 15]
Whan y muste loue that hateth̄ me.
And herken) nowe what seith̄ the wise,
That sheweth̄ ensample of good assise: 450
For a fole he seith̄ y him holde,
That taketh̄ a more burden) than he may welde;
So fare y nowe, weleawaye!
I loue the loue that y ne haue maye.'
To a wyndowe Guy yede thoo, 455
For to beholde the castel̄ and the toure also:
'O toure, thou art ful̄ faire sette!
In the is that maide beshette,

O Death! why dost thou avoid me?'

Guy from his window beheld the castle,

Þat liueþ þer in ioie & blis,
& ichir loue for soþe y-wis. 460
Tour, when wer thou ouer-þrowe,
And wiþ þe winde al to-blowe!
Þat y miȝt hir wiþ eyȝen se
Þat y loue more þan me!'
He ginneþ to wepe & sore siche, 465
His care him neweþ eu*er*iliche;
C. 278. Adoun he fel and swoune bigan,
(More sorwe made neuer man)
& cursed þe time þat he was bore,
For now he haþ his witt forlore. 470
'Loue,' he seyd, 'acursed þou be!
To michel miȝt it is in þe
Þat y ne may me fro þe were;
Loue, merci, þatow me no dere!
Leuer me were forto dye 475
Þan long to liuen here i*n* eyȝe.
Turnb. p. 14, l. 331. Allas, Felice, þat ich stounde,
Þi loue me haþ so ybounde!
& þat y serued þe þat day,
Acursed be þat time, seyen y may! 480
No bid ichaue non oþer mede,
Bot slake mi sorwe, ichaue nede.
Y loue þe & tow nouȝt me.
Euen dole may it nouȝt be;
For of mi sorwe no hastow nouȝt. 485
Allas! to grounde icham ybrouȝt!
Þou hast þe gode, & y þe quede:
Y brenne so spark on glede.
Seþþe þou me lokedest first to,
Þou me woundest wiþ a flo. 490
Schal y dye for þat siȝt?
Merci, Felice, þat swete wiȝt!
Mine hert is ful of venim spilt,
Of blis no worþ it neuer filt.'

That lyueth in ioye and in blisse:
Hir loue me woundeth withoute mysse. 460
O toure, why ne were thou ou*er*ethrawe,
And vpon the grounde alle to-drawe!
Than might y my lemman see,
That y loue more than me!'
He gynneth him bethinke and sore sighe, 465 which redoubled his woe.
His sorowe enneweth eu*er*e gretly;
To grounde he felle, and swowne beganne:
More sorowe had neu*er*e manne.
The tyme he cursed that he was borne; Guy cursed the day of his birth,
For loue he hath his witte lorne. 470
'O loue,' he seide, 'cursed thou bee!
So moche mighte is in the.

and wished for death.

Allas, Felice! that same stounde,
That eu*er*e thy loue hath me so stronge bounde!
And that y the serue shulde that daye,
Allas the while! nowe y sey maye. 480 He cursed the time he saw Felice;
Shalle y not haue noon other mede, [p. 16]
To a-slake my sorowe y had nede.
I loue the and thou noughte me.
Eeuenly deled ne that may[1] bee: [1 *read* ne may that]
Of alle my sorowe thou hast noughte. 485
Allas! to grounde y am broughte!
Thou hast the good and y the quede:
I brenne as doth the sparke on glede. he burned as a firebrand.
Thou art to lither a woman,
That for a lokyng the vpon 490
A man shuld dye for that sighte:
Mercy, Felice, thou swete wighte!
Myn herte is with venym spilde;
With blisse nomore it is like bee filde.'

Swiche liif ladde Gij sikerliche 495
Al that seuenniȝt holeliche.
His fader was for him sori,
Sabin his moder biment Gij,
MS. 110r. col. 1. þerl for him sori was,
þer liked non in that plas: 500
Litel & michel, al & some,
Biment Gij att[e] frome.
C. 247. Turnb. p. 15, l. 357. Perl dede þe leches of-sende
Of Gyes iuel to wite *þat* ende.
þe leches ben to him y-go: 505
Gij þai finde blaike and blo;
Hij asked him where his iuel stode.
He seyd for hete he brend nere wode:
'So hot ich am, & bren[n]inge,
Mi sorwe is eu*er* cominge, 510
þat al mi limes it haþ to-tiȝt;
Swiche liif y lede day & niȝt.
After þe hete me comeþ a chele
þat me greueþ wiþ vn-skele,
þat y wex cold as ise. 515
So vn-kinde iuel it is,
þat al mine limes it wil to-te;
& seþþe me comeþ swouninges þre,
For anguis swoune it me doþ
Tviis or þriis, y say for soþ. 520
Swiche liif y lede niȝt & day:
Non oþer wise y no can ȝou say.'
C. 265. ¶ þan seyd þat on, 'a feuer it is.'
'ȝa,' quod Gij, 'a liþer y-wis.'
þe leches gon, & lete Gij one, 525
þat makeþ wel michel mone.
'God,' quod Gij, 'what schal y do?
Hou long schal y liuen in wo?
Turnb. p. 16, l. 383. þat y no miȝt ded be,
C. 285. When y no may hir wiþ eyȝen se, 530

Suche lif had Guy sikirly 495
AH that weke hoolly.
For him his fader was weH sory,
Sabyne his moder bemeneth Guy,
The Erle for him sory was,
That it liked noon in that place: 500
LiteH and moche, aH and some,
Guy bemeneth at Frome.

So Guy went on for a week.

His father,

Sabin his mother,

and the Earl, all bemoaned him.

THE ERLE did for leches sende
To wite of Guyes euyl an ende.
The leches to him been goo: 505
Guy they fonde as blak as sloo;
Than they asked how it with him stode.
'For hete,' he seide, 'y breide nyghe wode:
So mikeH hete is in me,
That longe y ne may on lyue bee. 510
Hotter y am thanne fire brennyng, [p. 17]
Sorowe and woo is my menyng;
AH my body it hath vnright:
Suche lif y lede daye and nyght.
After that hete cometh a chele 515
That sore me greueth withoute hele;
Than wexe y colder than the yys:
Suche maner myn yuel is.

The Earl sent physicians to discover the nature of his illness.

Guy pretended he had an intermittent fever.

520

This is my lif nyghte and daie:
No more y kan therof you saie.'
THANNE seide that oon, 'a feuer it is.'
'Ye,' quoth Guy, 'the leuer me y-wis.'
The leches goth, and Guy leue allone, 525
That rewthfully maketh his mone.
'Now god,' quoth Guy, 'what shaH y doo?
How longe shaH laste me this woo?
Why ne may y dede bee,
Whan y ne may hir mery yen see, 530

The physicians assented,

and left him.

Guy recommenced his lament.

Þat haþ al mine hert & þouȝt!
& y no misgilt hir neuer nouȝt,
Bot on þat ichir loue wel,
& euer more loue schel!
ȝif ich it hir schewe, sche wil telle 535
Hir fader, & he me wil quelle.
Þei he it wist, siker apliȝt,
More þan me sle don he no miȝt.
ȝif he me slouȝ, it were schonde,
Schuld y þan for deþ wonde; 540
To hir for soþe ichil go
& schewe hir of mi michel wo.
MS. 110r. col. 2. Vnder heuen [n]is so strong þing
So is loue and wowing.
Now,' he seyd, 'what for þan? 545
Þei ich hir loue, blame me noman;
To warant ichil drawe atte frome
Þat loue doþ me þider come,
& þat loue doþ me go to þe
Þat y no may wiþ-hold me.' 550
C. 293. With þis Gij arisen is,
& to þe gate goþ y-wis.
'God,' quod Gij, 'y do foliliche:
Y sle me seluen sikerliche;
Turnb. p. 17, l. 409. Mine owhen [deþ] y go now secheinde. 555
God,' he seyd, 'be mine helpinde!'
Adoun he fel a-swounie;
& when he gan to dawei,
'To þe court,' he seyd, 'ichil go,
Be it for wele or for wo: 560
To þe court ichil, what so bitide,
Þei gret strengþe me do abide.'
C. 295. Now is Gij to court y-comen
As man þat is wiþ sorwe y-nome,
& in to an erber he is y-go, 565
Felice findeþ þer in þo;

That hath all myn) hert*is* thoughte?
And y neu*er*e amysse did hir noughte,
Bot oonly that y loue hir well,
And eu*er*e while y lyue shall.
Yf y hir beseche, she woll it telle 535
Hir fader, and than) he woll me quelle.
And though he it wiste right nowe, a plighte, 'If her father knew,
Nomore than slee me doo he mighte. he could only slay me.

Bot y shall goo and speke hir' too, 541
And shewe hir' my grete woo.
Vnder' heuen) is not so harde thing'
As is loue in wowyng'.'
Yet seide he after thanne, [p. 18] 545
'Though she me blame, noo force y kanne;
Bot to hir y shall sey so, I will go to her again.
That loue me did thider goo.'

Guy with that arisen is, 551 Guy went off.
And to the Courte he wente ywis.

After a swoon,

Nowe is Guy to Courte com̄e,
As man) that was with woo nom̄e;
In to an herber' he is goo, 565 he found Felice in a garden.
Felice he fonde therin thoo;

At hir fet he him leyd,
Al wepeand to hir he seyd,
C. 304. 'Felice, now ich am comen to þe,
& ȝif þou wilt, þou miȝt m[e] sle, 570
For now icham wiþ-in thi loke,
& þine hest ichaue to-broke.
For ich would þatow seye
þe sorwe þat y for þe dreye:
þe strong pine & þe wo 575
Y dreye for þe eu*er*-mo.
Mine hert schal bileue wiþ þe:
Wiltow, niltow, it schal[1] so be,
þat[2] mi bodi ferli[3] may,
Bot þat wille it lasteþ ay. 580
Turnb. p. 18, l. 435. þer while y liue, loue y þe wille,
& bot ȝif y do, ichil me spille;
For me no schal it to-deled be
þer while þat liif it lasteþ i*n* me;
þe to loue no miȝtow me forbede, 585
In wo & sorwe þou dost me fede.
[leaf 110v. col. 1] Whan it worþ þi fader y-teld
þatow hast mine hert i*n* weld,
& he wite that y loue þe,
Ichot for soþe he wil me sle; 590
& þat schal turn me al to blis
When y schal dye for soþe y-wis.
Henne forward ne reche y me
Of mi liif, whare it be,
No of mi deþ neuer þe mo 595
No reche y neuer where y go.'
C. 317. He ferd as he wer mat,
Adoun he fel aswoune wiþ þat;
Felice stode & loked him to
& biheld his strong wo; 600

[1] MS. *itschal.* [2] read *þat me?* [3] read *ferst?*

At hir fete he him leyde,
And than̾ aꝉ wepyng to hir̾ he seide:
'Y am com̄e mercy to aske of the;
Yf thou woꝉ thou maist slee me;
Thy com*m*aundeme*n*t y wote weꝉ y haue broke,
Now that y am com̄e before thy loke.
And leef me were surely
The sorowe that y haue suffred by and by,
Stronge peyn̄e sorowe and woo
That y for the haue endured eu*er*emoo.
Myn̄ herte shaꝉ y leue with the:
Woꝉ thou or not, so shaꝉ it bee;
My body farther̾ goo ne may,
And my wille lasteth̄ ay.
While y lyue, the loue y wille,
Whether̾ y saue my self or spille;
Thurgh̄ me demed it shaꝉ not bee
Whiles that lif is within̾ me.
The to loue thou may not forbede,
With̄ sorowe and woo thou dost me fede.

'I have broken thy hest and come.

Thou canst not forbid me to love thee.

Fro hense foreward it rekketh̄ not me [p. 19]
Of my lif how so it bee,
Ne of my deth̄ neu*er*e the moo
I ne rekke how that it goo,
For of this lif y am chekmate.'
A-downe he felle swounyng' with̄ that;
Felice loked vpon̾ him thoo.
And behelde his grete woo;
Ruthe she had in hir herte
Of his sorowe and his smerte.

I reck nought of life or death.'

He swooned, and Felice bade a maiden lift him up.

To a mayde sche seyd þo:
'Take him vp in þine armes to,
[1] MS. *onþe* & lay him soft on þe[1] grounde'; 605
& sche dede so in þat stounde.
Þat mayden ȝede to him wepeinde,
& Gij wel sore biminde:
Turnb. p. 19, l. 461. 'Bi god[2] of heuen,' sche seyd,
C. 330. & ich wer as feir a mayd, 610
[2] MS. *Bigod*
& as riche kinges douhter were
As ani in þis warld here,
& he of mi loue vnder-nome were,
As he is of þine in strong manere,
& he wald me so o loue ȝerne, 615
Me þenke y no myȝt it him nouȝt werne.'
Felice the feir answerd þo:
'Damisel,' sche seyd, 'whi seistow so?
Þou art to blame, al-so y se,
No-þing þer-mid no paistow me. 620
Oft þou hast y-herd in speche
Þat we no schal no man biseche,
Ac men schul biseche wimen
In the feirest maner þat þai can,
& fond to speden ȝif þai may 625
[3] MS. *biniȝtes* Boþe bi[3]niȝtes and bi day.'
Of his swouning he vpros þo;
Þe maiden him tok *in* armes to.
Felice seyd to Gij, 'þou dost folie,
Þatow wilt for mi loue dye; 630
Schal y do mi fader of-sende?
I schal him telle word & ende,
[leaf 110v. col. 2] Þat tow dost me litel worþschipe,
When þou me desirest to schenschipe;
Turnb. p. 20, l. 487. In his court he schal deme þe, 635
& al to-lime, to queme me.'
¶ Gij answerd anon þer-to,
'God ȝeue þat it wer y-do,

To a maide she seide thoo:
'Take him vp in thyn armes twoo,
And ley him vp fro the grounde, 605
Tiħ him bee past that bitter stounde.'

The maiden pitied him.
She said, were she the fairest on earth, she could not refuse him.

'By god of heueñ,' that maide seide,
'Thoughħ y were of the worlde the fairest maide, 610
And the Richest Kyng*is* Doughħter were
That in this worlde crowne dooth bere,
And he of my loue desirous were,
As he is of thine in stronge manere,
Ne wolde y him my loue werne, 615
And he me wolde therof lerne.

Felice reproved her for her sympathy with Guy.

Felice the faire answerd therto:
'Avoide, dameseħ, why seist thou so?
So thou shuld not rede me;
Thou art to blame forsothe y telle the. 620
Thou hast ofte herde this speche,
That we ne shuld noman beseche,
But they shuld beseche wom̃en
On the fairest man*er*e that they kan,
And assaye yf they spede may [p. 20] 625
Either by nyghħte or by day.'

Guy recovered consciousness.

Guy of swounyng awaked thoo;
The maide helde him in hir armes twoo.

'GUYE,' QUOTH Felice, 'thou doost folie:
Woħ thou for my loue dye? 630
After my fader y woħ sende,
And telle him eu*er*y worde to the ende,
That thou him doost grete disworship

Felice pointed out how angry her father would be.

Whan thou desirest my shenship;
In this Courte he shaħ dampne the 635
Highħe to hange, to please me.
Guye answerd anone righħt thoo:
'Now god wolde it mighħt bee so,

[1] MS. *pouhaddest* Þat of mi deþ þou haddest[1] wite !
Of mi liif is me bot lite; 640
Redi ich am it to vnder-fong,
Be it wiþ riȝt, be it wiþ wrong.'

C. 341. ¶ Felice hadde of him gret rewþe:
'Gij,' quod [sche], 'þou louest me *in* trewþe;
Al to michel þou art afoild,
Now þi blod it is acoild. 650
Ac o thing y grant þe;
More no miȝtow asky me:
Þer nis leuedi, no maiden non,
In þis cuntre so wide so man may gon,
& tow louedest hir astow dost me 655
Þat sche no wold grant hir loue to þe.'
Gij seyd to Felice, 'now lete þis be;
Now me þenke þou scornnest me.
Nis me nouȝt iuel anouȝ y-diȝt,
When þou wilt of me no-wiȝt? 660
[2] MS. *afole* Now a fole[2] ich-il be
& mi witt chau*n*ge for þe!'
C. 355. 'Gij,' seyd Felice, 'now vnder-stond:
For now nil y noþing wond;
Turnb. p. 21, l. 513. & þei y say þe al mi wille, 665
No hold it for non vn-skille:
No grome louen y no may
Fort he be kniȝt forsoþ to say,
Feir & beld to tellen by,
S[t]rong in armes & hardi; 670
& when þou hast armes vnder-fong,
& ichaue it vnder-stonde,
Þan schaltow haue þe loue of me,
ȝif þow be swiche as y telle þe.'

That of my deth̄ thou migh̄t bee the wite!
Therof y shulde bee wonder ligh̄te!
I am all̄ redy it to fonge,
Bee it with righ̄t or with̄ wronge;
For suche a drinke me is yiue,
That y ne kepe noo lenger lyue;
Myn) hede y shall̄ fayne for the leye,
I rekke not what any man seye.'
Felice had of him grete ruthe:
'Guye,' she seide, 'thou louest in truthe;
To moche thou art thurgh̄ loue assailled,
That thy wittes been) gretly dismaied.
So moche y shall̄ nowe doo for the
That more thou maist not bidde me:
Ther nys Lady nor man) noon), [p. 21]
So wide as me migh̄t in this Contree goon),
And thou loued hir as thou doost me,
But she wolde g*ra*unte to loue the.'
'Felice,' quoth̄ Guy, 'lete that bee,
For thou doost bot scorne me.'

Guy wished he was put to death for his love.

Felice began to pity him.

She granted that his love would prevail with any maiden.

Guy begged her not to mock him.

'Guy,' quoth̄ Felice, 'nowe vnderstonde:
My wille y haue to the in this stounde;
And take it not for noon) vnskille
Though̄ y sey to the my wille.
I woll̄ loue noo knaue in won̄e
Before that he bee knygh̄t bee-com̄e,
Faire and hende and gretly sette by,
Of armes good and hardy;

Felice undertook

if Guy were a knight

Thanne shall̄ thou haue the loue of me,
Yf thou wolbee as y telle the.'

he should have her love.

C. 365. When Gij herd þat tiding, 675
For ioie his hert gan to spring;
At hir he tok leue anon,
In-to the castel he gan to gon;
Al so swiþe as he it miȝt do,
In-to the court he gan to go: 680
[leaf 111r. col. 1] Of eu*er*ich day him þought ten
[1] *s* added over the line. Fort he seye his[1] lemen.
C. 375. & when he feld hi*m* hole & fere,
He went to court wiþ glad chere;
Michel ioie wiþ him þai made, 685
& alle þai wer bliþe & glade.

To þerl þan went Gij,
& gret þat kniȝt hardi, 690
& seyd, 'sir, þine armes ich ax;
ȝif ich am þer to y-wax,
Turnb. p. 22, l. 539. Ich am redi hem to fong,
& þe to serue wiþ-outen wrong.'
Þerl answerd, & seyd þo, 695
C. 384. 'Bleþeliche, Gij, seþþe þou wilt so.'
¶ Þerl dede anon ap*ar*aile
Gyes dobing wiþ-outen feyle;
Wel richelich he dubbed Gij,
& wiþ him felawes tventi, 700
Þat al barouns sones were
(For Gyes loue he dubbed hem þere),
Þat wiþ þerl Rohaud hadde ben long,
In his seruise armes to vnder-fong.
It was at þe holy trinite, 705
Þerl dubbed sir Gij þe fre,
& wiþ him tventi god gomis,
Kniȝtes and riche baroun sonis.
Of cloth of Tars & riche cendel
Was he[r] dobbeing eu*er*ich a del; 710

THANNE GUY herde that tyding',
For ioye his herte beganne to spryng';
His loue to hir anone he kaste than),
And in-to the CasteH forthwith he cam);
As sone as he might it doo,
To the highe palais he gan) goo:
Of oon) daie hym thought ten,
That he ne might see his lemman).
Whan) he him felte hole and suer,
To Courte he gooth with gladde cher';
FuH gladde chere they him made,
And thanked god, and were right glade
That Guy was to Courte come: [p. 22]
Gladde they were aH and some.
Before the Erle tho come Guy,
To him he kneled as to his lorde mighti;
'Sir,' quoth Guy, 'armes y aske the,
Yf y bee worthy accepte to bee;
Yf it bee thy wille that y theim fonge,
And serue the lorde withoute wronge.'
THE ERLE Rohaud answerd thoo,
'Blithely, Guy, sithe thou wolt so.'
The Erle dooth than) apparaille
Guyes dobbing' withoute faille;
He dud him dobbe richely,
And with him of his felawes twenty
That aH good baroñs soñes were,
(For Guyes loue he dobbed theim aH there)
That with the Erle Rohaud had bee longe
In seruice, armes for to fonge.
It was at the fest of the holy Trinyte,
That the Erle dobbed Guy so free,
And other twenty for his loue,
Good knyghtis [and] baroñs soñes, aboue.
Of riche Clothes and sendaH
Was their' dobbyng, thurgh-oute aH;

On hearing this, Guy's heart leaped for joy.

He soon felt hale, and repaired gladly to court.

He begged the Earl to dub him a knight.

The Earl promised he would,

and dubbed Guy with twenty other young men.

The ceremony took place at the Holy Trinity.

Þe panis al of fow & griis,
Þe mantels weren of michel priis,
Wiþ riche armour & gode stedes,
Þe best þat wer in lond at nedis.
Alder-best was Gij y-diȝt, 715
Þei he wer an emperour sone, apliȝt:
So richeliche dobbed was he,
Nas no swiche in þis cuntre;
Turnb. p. 23, l. 565. Wiþ riche stedes wele erninde,
Palfreys, coursours wele bereinde. 720
No was þer noiþ*er* sweyn no knaue,
Þat ouȝt failed þat he schuld haue.
¶ Now is sir Gij dobbed to kniȝt;
Feir he was and michel of miȝt.
C. 429. To Felice went sir Gij, 725
& gret hir wel curteyslie,
[leaf 111r. col. 2] & seyd, 'ichaue don astow seydest me to,
For þe ichaue suffred miche wo:

Arme for þe ichaue vnder-fong,
Þe to se me þouȝt long.
Þou art me boþe leue & dere,
Ich am y-comen þi wille to here.'
¶ 'Gij,' seyd Felice, 'heye þe nouȝt: 735
ȝete hastow no þing of armes y-wrouȝt.
No artow þe better neuer a del
Þan þou wer ere, y say þe wel,
Bot on þatow [hast] newe dobing,
& art cleped kniȝt wiþ-outen lesing; 740

Of riche panys of faire grys, They were richly arrayed,
And with̄ mantel̄*is* riche of pris;
Of good armes and stoute stedes,
Of al̄ the londe the beste at nedes.
Ou*er*e theim al̄ was Guy best diḡte,
Though̄ he an Emp*er*our*is* soñe had bee riḡte:'
Ther' miḡt noon' better diḡte bee: [p. 23] but Guy most richly of all.
With̄ al̄ kynnes armes dobbed was he.

Ther' ne was squier neither knaue
That failled ouḡte bot he shuld haue.
Now is Guy dobbed knyḡt,
Curteis and hende, and of grete myḡt.
Than to Felice he ganne goo, Thereafter, Guy presented himself to Felice,
With̄ grete loue he resouned hir thoo:
'Wel̄ thou wotest, lemman', that it is so,
For the that y haue suffred grete woo
In al̄ my body, y the pliḡte,
Thou hast made me passing' liḡte.
Armes y haue for the fonge, and claimed her love.
The to see me thouḡte longe;
Now y am̄ at thy wille com̄e,
As to hir' that y loue most in woñe.
Than seide Felice, 'ne haste the nouḡt: But she told him,
Yet hast thou noo thing' of armes wrouḡte.
Noo better thou art neu*er*e a dele
Than thou were before, y preoue it wele,
Bot oonly that thou hast newe dobbyng',
And knyḡt art cleped withoute lesyng'.
Bot whan y may wite and see he had done nothing yet:
That thou hast in torment*is* bee,
And that thou hast knyḡtes nom̄e,
Castell*is* and Toures ou*er*ecom̄e,
And thurḡ al̄ the londe and Contree
Thy knyḡthode ful̄ good knowen' bee,

Bot it be þurch þi miȝt,
Þou no miȝt chalang loue þurch riȝt.'
C. 445. When Gij herd Felice so speke,
He tok his leue and gan out reke; 750
At hir leue he tok anon,
& to his fader he gan to gon,
Turnb. p. 24, l. 591. & seyd, 'fader, vnder-stond me:
Icham newe dobbed as ȝe may se,
Ouer þe se ichil now fare 755
To win priis & los þare.'
His fader him answerd sone,
C. 475. 'Sone, god leue þe wele to done!
& als michel as þe nede be,
Sone, schaltow haue wiþ þe.' 760

¶ Suward cleped Herhaud to him,
& seyd, 'Herhaud, frende min,
Wiþ Gi mi sone schaltow wende; 765
In gode stede mot ȝe lende.
Þou schalt kepe mi sone Gij,
For he is mi sone & tow mi norri.

Loke, Herhaud, þat tow hi*m* kepe;
& þine felawes þat ben ȝepe,
Boþe Torold & sir Vrri,
On ȝou y trust sikerli;
& wiþ Herhaud schul ȝe go 775
To kepe mi sone from care & wo.'
& hii answerd sone anon,
'Hastiliche, sir, wil we wiþ him gon.'
Þai weren boþe strong kniȝtes,
[1] altered to *fiȝttes* in MS. Bold and hardi in ich fiȝtes.[1] 780
C. 485. Gij tok wiþ him what he wold
Boþe of siluer & of gold.

And that it bee for thy myght̄e,
And than thou may aske me loue with̄ right̄e.

he must prove his valour.

WHANNE GUY herde Felice so speke, [p. 24]
His leue he toke and ganne oute reke; 750
Of Felice he toke his leue anone,
And to his Fader he gan̄ gone.

Guy then asked his father's leave

'Sir,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me:
I am̄ nowe dobbed as ye may see;
Ouer see y woH fare 755
To take lawes and pris there.'

to fare over sea.

Syward his fader answerd his soñe,
'God *gra*unte the weH ayene to com̄e!
Siluer and golde take enowe,
As moche as nedeth for thy prowe; 760
At thy wille take with the
Hors and harneys and good mayne.'
Sywarde clepeth̄ heraude to him,
And seide, 'heraude, frende myñ,
With̄ my soñe thou shalt wende 765
In good stede with̄ him to lende.

His father gave him three knights, Herhaud,

Thou shalt kepe my soñe Guy
That is yonge knyght̄ and thy nory,
For he is bot a yongelyng';
I you beteche bothe to heueñ King', 770
And the heraude for to kepe;
And thy felawes aH by hepe,
That is Tureld and Vrry,
In you y truste sikirly;
To-gider with̄ heraude they shuH goo, 775
To kepe my soñes body fro woo.'

Torold, and Urri, as companions.

'Sir,' quoth̄ they eu*er*ychon̄, [p. 25]
'FuH gladly we woH with him goon̄.'
Knyght̄es they were fuH good, y plight̄e,
Of aH the contree the best in fight̄e. 780
Guy toke of siluer and golde
As moche as he haue wolde.

[leaf 111v. col. 1] Turnb. p. 25, l. 617.
C. 500. To þe se þai ben now y-come,
& seyled ouer atte frome.
þai comen in-to Normondye, 785
Knight-schippe þai sechen on heye;
In Ron Gij takeþ his herberwe
Wiþ þe richest man of þe borwe;
Mete & drink þai hadde anouȝ,
Nas þer non þat it wiþ-drouȝ. 790

Sir Gij his ost cleped him to,
& him bi-gan to frein þo,
& asked him wher þe turnament schuld be, 795
So mani scheldes þan seye he.
C. 511. His ost seyd, 'sir, wite ȝe nouȝt
Of þis turnament þat is biþouȝt?'
'No,' seyd Gij, 'bi mine wite,
Y no herd þer-of neuer ȝete.' 800
His ost him answerd snelle,
'Of þat turnament y schal ȝou telle:
It schal be for a maiden of p*ris*,
Þemp*er*ours douhter sche is;
A turnament he haþ don grede, 805
A swiþe michel & vn-rede.
C. 521. þer nis no kniȝt in Speyne,
Al to þe se of Breteyne,
þat ouȝt y-told wiþ be,
þer men schal his miȝt se. 810
Turnb. p. 26, l. 643. He þat best doþ þat day,
þer he schal winne þat play.
Of euerich londe þider com kniȝtes,
þat strong ben & bold in fiȝtes;
For who that is gode & snelle, 815
As ichaue herd oþer men telle,
Who þat þer be of mest miȝt,
Grete worþschipe he winneþ, apliȝt.

To the see they been coṁe,
And ou*er*e they saille at Froṁe;
Coṁe they been in-to Normandye, 785
Knyghthode shewyng' by and by.
At . . . . . .[1] taketh Guy herborough
With the richest of that borowgh;
Of the best they had enough,
Ne was ther noon) that it with-drough; 790
For they had enough eu*er*e[2] see,
Golde and siluer grete plentee.

With them he departed over sea,

and arrived in Normandy, at Rouen.

[1 *Blank space in MS.*]

[2 read *ouere?*]

GUYE HIS hoste cleped him to;
Tidinges he asked of him thoo
Where that any torment shuld bee, 795
So many sheldes ledde sawe he.
'Sir,' quoth his hoste, 'ne wote ye nought
Of a torment that is bethought?'
'Noo,' quoth Guy, 'by Ie*s*u swete,
Therof ne herde y neu*er*e yette.' 800
'Sir,' quoth his hoste, 'and ye woH duelle,
AH that y wote y shaH you telle:
A maide brighte and of grete pris,
(Of Almaigne the Emp*erour*s Doughter she is)
A turnement she hath doo cryde, 805
I herde neu*er*e noon) suche on this side;
For there nys knyghte in aH Spaigne, [p. 26]
Anone to the see of Britaigne,
That of armes aughtis named bee,
Bot there his might men) shaH see. 810

Guy questioned his host,

and learned that there was to be a tournament,

in honour of the Emperor's daughter.

The winner of the tournament was to have

Of eu*er*y londe thider coṁe knyghtes,
Proude and bolde, and stronge in fighte*s*,

And they that been) of most mighte,
Grete worship they shaH wynne, aplighte.

For þe maiden y spac of er,
Is þemp*er*ours douhter Reyner; 820
He schal bring to þe turm*en*t þ*a*t day
(Wele is him þat it winne may)
C. 537. A ger-fauk þat is milke white
(To him nis nowhare his liche),
& a stede of gret bounte 825
(He no schuld be ȝouen for a cuntre).
& tvai grehou*n*des þat white ben
(Swiche no haþ men nowhar*e* y-sen).
[leaf 111v. col. 2] & who so winneþ þe turnament al
Bi aiþer half, þe priis have schal, 830
Þe gerfauk & þe gode stede
Boþe he schal haue to mede,
& þe tvay grehoundes þat gode beþ
He schal haue þat þer best deþ,
& þe maiden þat is so fre, 835
Bot he haue a fairer in his cu*n*tre.'
Turnb. p. 27, l. 669.
C. 549. ¶ When sir Gij herd þat tiding,
Glad he was wiþ-out*en* lesing;
Sir Gij seyd to his fere,
'In gode time come we here: 840
To morwe, so sone so it is day,
We wil wenden in our way.'
Sir [Gij] his ost a palfrey ȝaf þo,
For þe tiding he teld him to.
Anon amorwe wel erliche 845
Þai don hem i*n* her wai sikerliche.

Of rideing wil þai neuer stent
To þai com to þe turnament. 850
& when þai wer þider y-come,
Þai seye þer mani douȝti gome:
Bi feldes & bi riuers ridinde
Mani a kniȝt þai seye cominde.

For that maide y spake of eer,
Is the Emperours doughter Reyner; 820
To that *tur*nement he wolh bringe that daye
(Welh may him bee that it wynne maye)
A Girfauk alh swanne white — a milk-white falcon,
(Of his better y herde neu*er*e yette)
And an hors of grete bountee 825 — a steed,
(It is worthe alh a contree)
And twoo Greyhoundes that good bee — 2 white greyhounds,
(Their better did ye neu*er*e see);
And he that the *tur*nement ou*er*e-cometh alh
On eu*er*y behalue, the pris he haue shalh, 830
The White Girfauk and the stede
Bothe he shalh haue to his mede
And the Greyhoundes that so good bethh,
Alh shalh he haue that best doethh;
And that maide that is so free, 835 — and the maiden herself.
Bot he haue a lemman that fairer bee.'
Whan Guy herde this tydingi, — Guy determined to be present,
Welh gladde he was withoute lesyngi;
Than seide Guy to his feere,
'In good tyme come we here. 840
To morowe as sone as it is daye, [p. 27]
We wolh doo vs on oure weye.'
Guy to his hoste a palfrey yaf — and presented his host with a palfrey for his tidings.
For the tiding*is* that he him tolde hathh.
On the morowe fulh tymely 845
On their wey thei dresse theim sikirly, — Next morning they made their way
Guy and his feres goode
Barons alh of kynde blode.
Of ridingi dothh they neu*er*e stent
Tilh they come to that turnement. 850 — to the place of the tournament.
Whan thei thider were come
And[1] sawe there many a semely man. — [1] read *thei*
Bothe by Ryuers and by feldes ridingi
Many knyghtes they sawe comyngi

& when þai were þider y-come, 855
To þe turnament þai went al & some;
Out of þe rengge þai gun he*m* diȝt,
Þe barouns þ*a*t were of miche miȝt.
Þan oxed anon sir Gij
[1] read *houed?* To þe barouns þat oned[1] hi*m* bi: 860
C. 570. 'What is he, þat ich kniȝt,
Þat out of þe renge haþ him diȝt,
Wiþ þo armes briȝt & schene?'
Hii answerd anon: 'y wene,
Turnb. p. 28, l. 695. It is a kniȝt of miche priis, 865
Douhti he is bi Seyn Deniis;
Out of þe rengge he haþ hi*m* diȝt,
ȝif he miȝt finden ani kniȝt
Þat wiþ hi*m* wald iusti;
Þer-to he makeþ him redi.' 870
Oȝaines sir Gij þer come Gayer,
To iuste wiþ him he drouȝ hi*m* ner;
He rode to hi*m* as a gode kniȝt,
[2] MS. *aman* He semed a man[2] of miche miȝt.

MS. 112r. col. 1. Gaier smot sir Gij bifore
[3] MS. *þescheld* & þurch þe scheld[3] him haþ i-bore;
Þe launce brak, þat was wele wrouȝt,
Þe hauberk was gode & failed nouȝt. 880
Gij afterward Gaier smot,
To grounde he feld him fot hot,
Þe stede toke bi the reyn,
& lepe vp wiþ gret meyn.
C. 582. Now ginneþ þe turnamint: 885
Ich smit on oþer wel gode dint;
Þai smiten togider for soþ, y pliȝt,
Eueriche to nim oþer dede his miȝt.
Wel mani kniȝtes Gij wan þat day,
Of þe maistri he wan þat play; 890

And whan) thei thider aH were com̄e, 855
To ioustes they wente than fuH soñe;
Oute of the thrange they gan theim dig̃hte,
The Baroñs aH of grete mig̃hte.
Than) asked sir Guy
Of a lorde that stode him by: 860
'Who is nowe that same Knyg̃ht
That oute of the rowe doot̃h him dig̃ht?'
'I shaH telle the: as y wene,
That same with the armes shene
A Knyg̃ht he is of grete pris, 865
And y the swere by seynt Denys,
For to iouste he is dig̃hte,
And he may fynde any knyg̃hte
That ayenst him darre iousty:
Therto he maket̃h him redy.' 870

Guy asked the name of a knight

who rode out to meet him.

WHANNE GUYE sawe com̄yng' was Gayer, [p. 28]
Redy to iouste he drawet̃h him ner';
Oute of the Rowe he doot̃h him hye,
WeH he sembled as a knyg̃hte hardye.
They smytteñ than to geders thoo, 875
FuH harde strokes they yiuen bothe two.
Gaer smote Guy before,
Thurg̃houte the shelde his launce he bore;
The launce to-brake, that was so weH wrough̃t:
The hauberk*is* were good and failled noug̃ht. 880
And Guy to Gaer thoo he smote,
That to grounde he felled him fote hote;
That hors he taket̃h by the Reyne
And forthe he wendet̃h wit̃h meyñe.
Tho beganne that turnement: 885
Eche Knyg̃ht on other smote good dent;
Harde they smyte, y the plig̃hte,
Eche to take other they doo their mig̃hte.
So many knyg̃ht*is* Guy toke that daye
And thurg̃h his strengt̃h ou*er*come that playe, 890

It was Gayer:

they encounter.

Guy throws him,

and routs all whom he meets.

So mani helmes he to-drof,
Þat mani man wonderd þ*er*-of:
Turnb. p. 29, l. 721. Sat he neuer so wel no so fast,
Þat he no feld him sone on hast.
Þe douke Ot*us* of Pauie 895
To Gij he hadde envie;
Wiþ him he wald iusti,
It turned hi*m* to vilani.
Þe douke come prikia*n*d on his stede
Þat certeyne was, and gode at nede, 900
& sir Gij on anoþer al-so;
Gode kniȝtes þai weren bo.
C. 603. Gij þurch þe scholder hi*m* smot,
& feld him to grou*n*de fot hot.
¶ Þe douke Reyner seye þat cas 905
Of Sessoine: wel modi he was.
He come als swiþe as he miȝt driue,
Gij to smite he heyed bliue,
& seyd to him: '*in* iuel stounde
ȝaf þou þe douke Otous wounde. 910
To wroþer hele iuste þou wiþ him.
He is mi germain cosyn:
Icham þe douke Reyner þ*a*t to þe speke;
Icham y-comen hi*m* to awreke:
Turn þe and iuste wiþ me.' 915
'Bleþeliche,' quod Gij, 'bi my leute.'
C. 617. Gij hi*m* turned & gan to smite;
He nold spare him bot lite;
Turnb. p. 30, l. 747. He smot þe douke on þe scheld,
Þat it fleye in þe feld, 920
MS. 112r. col. 2. & bar þe douke Reyner saunfeil
Ouer & oue[r] his hors tayl.
Þe stede bi þe reyn he haþ y-nome,
Oȝain to þe douke he is y-come.
'Here is þine hors, y ȝiue it te; 925
When ichaue nede, aquite it me!'

That euery mañ wondred therof:
So many helmes he there aƚƚ to-drof.
That daye satte noman there so faste,
Bot that he felled him at the laste.
And the Duke Otes of Pauye
At Guy he had grete enuye;
For pride he wolde witħ him iousty,
And therof hym befelle grete vilanye.

He overthrows Otous, duke of Pavia,

Thurgħ the shulder Guy him smote,
To grounde he felle, god it wote.
The Duke Reyner sawe that caas, [p. 29]
And therfore he fuƚƚ angry was.
Toward Guy he ganne dryue,
Him to smyte he hietħ bylyue
And seide to Guy: 'in euyl stounde
Thou gaue Duke Otes a greuous wounde.
In euyl tyme thou iousted witħ him.
He is my nygħe germayne Cousyñ:
I am the Duke Reyner that to the speke;
I am com̄e him on the to awreke.'
'I graunte,' quotħ Guy, 'so mote y thee.
Witħdrawe the anone and iouste witħ me.'
Guy to him beganne to smyte
And did him not spare bot a lite;
An higħe he smote him in the shelde,
That downe he felled him in the feelde.

and Duke Reyner of Saxony,

The hors by reyne he hatħ nom̄e,
And to the Duke therwitħ he is com̄e.
'Nowe here thy hors y take the;
Yf y haue nede, yelde it me.'

whose horse he returns to him.

& wele he ȝalt him his while,
As gode kniȝt wiþ-outen gile;
I schal ȝou tel feir & wel
Hou he it ȝald him eu*er*idel. 930

C. 627. When þe douk Ot*us* y-seye þis,
To-ȝaines Gij he come, y-wis:
'Sir kniȝt,' he seyd, 'y prey þe,
Tel me þi name[1] and whenne tow be.'
¶ Sir Gij answerd wel freliche, 935
'Y schal þe tel ful bleþeliche:
Gij of Warwike men clepeþ me;
Ich was y-born in þat cuntre.'
Þe douk Lowayn cam wiþ þis,
A gode spere in his hond, y-wis; 940
To Gij he smot wiþ gret hete,
& Gij oȝain to him smite:
To-gider so hard gun þai driue,
Þat her speres gan al to-riue.
Þai smiten togider hard & wel 945
Wiþ her swerdes of grou*n*den stiel
Þurch scheld & hauberk also:
Strong fiȝt was bi-tven hem to.
Wiþ that come Herhaud priking;
Þe douk he met coming, 950
& of his hors him haþ y-feld
Riȝt long streȝt in þe feld.
Wiþ þat come þe douke Gaudiner,
& mett wiþ sir Torold þer;
Sir Torold smot him on þe scheld, 955
Þat he feld him in the feld;
He semed kniȝt gode & hardi.
C. 648. Wiþ þat come prikeing sir Urri;
Þan gan þe fiȝt to ben aferd;
Of swiche ne haue ȝe nouȝt y-herd, 960
No ich it nouȝt telle no miȝt,
For long dueling, y ȝou pliȝt,

[1] MS. *þiname*

Turnb. p. 31, l. 773.

And he fuꝗ weꝗ quytte his while,
As a good knygꝗt shuld withoute gile;
Sone ye may here eu*er*y dele
How he him it yelde swithe wele. 930
Whan the Duke Otes herde this,
Ayenst Guy he cōme, ywis:
'Sir Knygꝗt, telle thou me
Of whennes thou art and what thy name bee.'
And Guy answerd than boldely, 935
'I telle the nowe fuꝗ truely:
Guy of Warrewik men clepe me; [p. 30]
I was borñe in that Contree.'
The Duke of Louayne cōmeth wiꝗ this
And a good spere in his hande, ywis; 940
To Guy he smote wiꝗ grete hete,
And he to him and wolde not lete:
Wiꝗ grete dyntes they to-geder dryueꝗ,
That their launces aꝗ to-slyueretꝗ.
They smyte to-geder harde and wele 945
Wiꝗ their swerdes of good steele.
They thirle armes and sheldes also:
Stronge fighte ther is betwene theim two.

Guy fought also with the duke of Louvain,

THANNE Heraude of Arderñ fortꝗ gañ sp*r*inge,
And the Duke he mette in his cōmynge: 950
Farre of his hors he hatꝗ him felled
Aꝗ longestreighꝗt in the felde.
To the Duke Gaudemer than he smote,
And of his hors he felled him fote hote:

whom Herhaud unhorsed.

Torold fought with Gaudiner.

Weꝗ he dootꝗ as knygꝗt hardy.
Wiꝗ that cōmetꝗ to him vrry.
Thanne beganne that fighte wiꝗ swerde:
Of suche ye ne haue bot seelde herde. 960

Urri distinguished himself also.

Much valour was displayed,

No no clerk vnder sonne,
MS. 112v. col. 1. þat þe soþe ȝou telle conne;
Bot al þe folk of þat cuntre 965
Seyd þat Gij þe best miȝt be.
& þat oþer day y-same
Sir Gij wan þat ich game;
& þer-fore, on euerich a side,
On him was leyd al þe pride. 970
Turnb. p. 32, l. 799. So opon þe þridde day
C. 660. þe kniȝtes tok her leue and went oway.
¶ Wiþ þis come þe douk prikeing,
A gode kniȝt and wele doing.
'Lordinges,' he seyd, 'herkeneþ to me: 975
Ichil ȝou telle hou it schal be;
& who so þer-oȝain sey ouȝt,
Of bateyl no þarf him feyl nouȝt.'
þai seyden al couinliche,
þe dome was ȝouen sikerliche; 980
þe gerfauk and þe gode stede,
þe grehoundes schul haue to mede
Gij of Warwike, þe noble kniȝt,
For best nov doand in þis fiȝt.

þus þe kniȝtes ben departed y-wis;
Sir Gij to jn y-comen is,
& dede him vnarmi:
Of turnament he was weri.
C. 679. ¶ Wiþ þat come a seriant prikeinde, 995
Gentil he was & wele spekeinde;
To sir Gyes in he is y-come,
& him he gret atte frome:

Bot the folke sey of that contree 965
That Guye euer the beste is he. but by none more than Guy.
And on morowe for the same
The pris he had of that game.
Guy is preised on eu*er*y side,
And on him is to*ur*ned aH the pride. 970
And, tho coṁe the thirde daye, On the third day
That eu*er*y maṅ shulde wende his weye,
There coṁe the Duke Reyner priking', [p. 31]
That good knygh̄t was and weH doyng'.
'Lordynges,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me, 975
Yf y myssey, that it may amended bee.

This Girfauk and this stede,
Thise Greyhoundes shaH haue to mede
He that theim beste hath̄ gete Guy was declared to have won the prize.
Is Guy of Warrewik, take ye kepe.
And that therto withseith̄ augh̄t, 985
Of bataille ne may he faille naugh̄t.'
AH they seide coṁenly,
'Thy doṁe we g*ra*unte, sikirly.'
Than they cryde as was the lawe
That Guy the p*re*sentez shuld haue by sothe sawe. 990
Whan they were aH went,
Guy to his Inne is coṁe, v*er*ament,
And did him vnarme lightly;
For of the t*ur*nement he was wery.
With̄ this coṁeth a sergeant ridyng' 995 A serjeant
Slie and wise and wele speking';
To Guyes Inne he is coṁe,
And to Guy he wente righ̄t soṅe.

'Thou art y-chesen chef & p*ris*
Of al þis cuntre for soþe y-wis;
For þou hast y-won þis turname*n*t,
Y make þe here þis present
Turnb. p. 33, l. 825. Fram þe maiden Blancheflour, 1005
Þat is mi lordes douhter þemp*er*our:
Þe gerfauk & þe stede also,
& þe tvay grehou*n*des þer-to;
& ȝete hir loue wiþ þan,
Bot þou haue a fairer leman. 1010
Sche þat is þe tour wiþ-inne,
To day þou miȝt hir loue wi*n*ne.'

C. 691. Wel curteysliche answerd sir Gij:
'Sir,' he seyd, 'gramerci;
Ich vnder-fong þis present, 1015
& þonke hir þat it hider sent;
MS. 112v. col. 2. Hir druerie ich vnder-fong,
Hir kniȝt to [be] wiþouten wrong.
Leue fere,' he seyd, 'herken to me,
What þat y schal telle þe: 1020
Þis armes ichil the ȝiue,
& make riche while þou liue;
& al þine feren þat be wiþ þe
Riche ȝiftes schulle*n* haue*n* of me,
& do ich-il ȝou grete honour 1025
For þat maidens loue Blauncheflour.'

C. 703. 'Gramerci, sir Gij,' seyd he;
[1] MS. *ynouȝt*. 'For armes come y nouȝt[1] to þe,
Ac to þe maiden ichil wende,
& tel hir boþe ord & ende, 1030
Turnb. p. 34, l. 851. Blau*n*cheflour, þat swete thing,
Ichil hir tel gode tiding.'

C. 709. Þe seriant goþ & lete Gij þare,
Þat liueþ in ioie and nouȝt in care.

Curteisly Guy he grette :
'Sir Guy,' he seide, 'god the kepe : 1000
Thou art holde the best in this borough
And in aH this londe thurgh and thorough.
Thou hast wonne the turnement,
Therfore y bringe to the this present
In the Maidens behalue Blanchefloure, 1005
My lordes doughter the Emperoure : brought it to Guy's lodging
This white Girfauk, the stede also, [p. 32]
Thise white Greyhoundes, that good bee bothe two.
Hir loue the she *gra*unteth with aH than, with Blanche-flower's love.
Bot if thou haue a fairer lemman, 1010
Than she that is the toure withynne :
This daie thou may hir loue wynne.'
FuH curteisly answerd Guy : Guy
'Of thise p*re*sentes moult g*ra*unt m*er*cy,
And thanke hir that theim hider sent : 1015
FuH gladly y resceiue hir present,
Hir knyght to bee withoute wronge :
I shaH hir duely vnderfonge.
My leue frende, nowe vnderstonde me :
Thou shaH doo as y sey the. 1020
Thise armes y shaH the nowe yiue offered rich presents
And make the riche while thou lyue ;
And aH thy felawes that bee with the
Riche yiftes they shuH haue of me,
And doo you y shaH grete honour 1025 to the messengers,
For the Maidens loue Blancheflour.'
'Grant m*er*cy, sir Guy,' seide he ;
'For armes y come not to the, but they declined them.
And right to the maide y shaH wende
And telle hir worde and ende, 1030
To Blancheflour, that swete thing,
And telle hir of the good tyding.'
THE YONGE man gooth and Guy lefte there,
That is in ioye and not in kare.

Tvay swaines Gij clepeþ him to, 1035
Anon he seyd to hem bo:
'This present ȝe schullen vnderfong,
& wende þer-wiþ into Inglond,
& present *þer*-wiþ bi mi word
Rohaut, mi kinde lord.' 1040
C. 718. & when þai herd what he hem hete,
In her way þai dede hem skete,
& went þe[r]wiþ in-to Inglond,
& þerl Rohaut þer þai fond.
Þe gerfauk and þe gode stede, 1045
Þe tvai grehoundes wiþ hem[1] ȝede;
Þerl þai made *þer*-wiþ present,
Þat sir Gij wan in turnament.
& anon þai him teld
Gij was þe best in þe feld, 1050
& þat he was best y-teld bi
Of al þe kniȝtes of Normandi.

[1] MS. originally *him*.

C. 737. Þerl þer-of wel glad he was,
& þonked god of þat gras;
& Felice þe feir dede al-so,
When þe tiding come hir to; 1060
And al his frendes eld and ȝing
Glad were of þat[2] tiding.
C. 743. Nov Gij wendeþ in-to fer lond,
More of auentours for to fond;
Forþ he went in-to Speyne,[3] 1065
& after in-to Almeyne.
Þer nas noi*þer* turnament no burdis,
Þat Gij þer-of no wan þe priis.
He was out al þat ȝer
In mani londes fer & ner, 1070

Turnb. p. 35, l. 877.

[2] *d* expunged after *þat*.

MS. 113r. col. 1.

[3] MS. originally *Speyine*.

Two sweynes Guy cleped him to,
To theim he seide and bade also, — Guy sent his prize
That they with̄ that p*re*sentȝ shuld fonde [p. 33]
Assone as they migh̄t in-to Englonde
And p*re*sente therwith̄ in his worde
The Erle Rouhaude, his kynde lorde. — to Earl Rohaut,
Whan they herde what Guy theim bade,
Fuł redy thei made theim with̄ hert glade.
They wente than in-to Englonde:
At Warrewik the Erle there they fonde.
The White Girfauk and the stede, — the jerfalcon, the steed, and two greyhounds.
The two Greyhoundes that by theim yede,
To the Erle they made their p*re*sent;
And that Guy it wanne at the turnement
Ał they haue the Erle telde,
And that he was the best in the felde,
And that he was moste sette by
Of ał the knygh̄t*is* in Normandy,
And that the Emp*er*ro*ur* dough̄ter with ał than̄
Hadde him chose to hir lemman̄.

WHANNE the Erle herde this,
Fuł gladde he was therof', ywis,
That Guy so moche preised was. — The Earl,
His fader thanked god of that cas:
Felice the faire did also, — Felice,
Whan̄ the tidinges were tolde hir to.
Ał his frendes olde and yinge — and all his friends were glad.
Were fuł gladde of that tidinge.
Tho wente Guy in-to farrer londe
Turnement*is* and ioustes for to fonde.
In Almaigne and in̄ Lombardie,
In Fraunce and in Normandie.
Ther' was noo t*ur*nement, ywis, [p. 34] — After Guy had thus won renown in many lands,
Bot he was therat and had the pris.
He was oute more than a yere:
Thurgh̄ ał londes men preised him there

And best is teld vnder sunne,
& mest frendes haþ y-wonne.

Þan seyd Herhaud to sir Gij 1075
(His maister he was & kniȝt hardi):
'In-to Inglond we schul nov go,
So wele so we may it do,
For we han ouer al y-be,
Þe p*ris* y-wonne in eu*er*ich cuntre.' 1080
Gij seyd, 'maister, y grant wel;
At þi wil be it eueridel.'
'Now we han ben her & tar,
Þe pris y-wonne eu*er* ay-war;
C. 756. To king Aþelston þou schalt aqueynt þe 1085
Of Inglond þat is so fre,
& wiþ þe barouns also,
So wele þou may it nov do.

Turnb. p. 36, l. 903.
¶ Gij seyd, 'tomorwe, when it is day,
Wende we wil in our way.'
& when þe day is y-come,
In her way þai ben y-nome;
Ouer se þai gan wende 1095
C. 765. In Inglond þai gun lende.
Anon þai com to king Athelston,
Wel fair he hem vnder-fenge anon;
Wiþ erls & barouns aqueynt hi*m* dede
Þat riche ȝiftes him bede. 1100
Nov is Gij to Warwike fare;
Þerl Rohaut he fint þare.
He welcomed him & his fere,
For he was him leue & dere,
& kist him wel sweteliche, 1105
& of his present þonked him miche.

And helde him the best vnder sonne.
Many a good frende he had there wonne.
To [1] ayene he is com̄e
And with̄ his good hooste his Inne nom̄e.
'SIR,' QUOTH heraude to Guy
(His maister he was, a Knygh̄t hardy),
'To Englonde nowe woł we goo:
With worship we may it nowe doo;
For we haue ou*er*e ał bee
And the pris wonne in eu*er*y contree.

[1 *Blank space left in MS.*]

Herhaud advised him

to return home.

Guy consented,

To the kyng' thou shał acqueynte the
Of Englond, that is so free,
And to the Baron̄s also
Wel bee-knowen̄ thou shalt the doo.'
'Maister,' he seith̄, 'y g*ra*unte wele,
After the that it bee eu*er*y dele;
And to-morowe whan it is daye,
We woł forthe on oure weye.'
Guy aroosse on morowe thoo,
And to the see they been̄ goo:
Assone as they migh̄t, to shippe they wente,
And in-to Englond they com̄e in the lente.
To kyng' Athelston) Guy is com̄e,
And with̄ him he is aqueynted fuł sone,
With̄ the Erles and Baron̄s also,
And fuł riche yiftes they gaue him tho.
To Warrewik than he is fare: [p. 35]
The Erle Rohaude he fonde there,
That faire vnderfonge him and his feere;
For he was him bothe leef and dere.
He kissed him fuł swetely
And of his present' thanked him hertly.

and next morning they set off.

In England King Athelstan welcomed him,

so did Earl Rohaut,

To his leman he is y-come,
& euen forþ hir-self sche haþ him nome.

Glad was his fader for him,
Sabin his moder & al his kin,
& al þe folk of þat cuntre
Bliþe were þai miȝt him se.

C. 777. MS. 113r. col. 2. ¶ To Felice þan sir Gij is go; 1115
Sweteliche he seyd hir to:
'Leman,' he seyd, 'wele þou be,
Mi liif ichaue for loue of þe;
Turnb. p. 37, l. 927. Ded ich were ȝif þou nere,
Mi bodi destrud and leyd on bere. 1120
When þou þi wille hadde seyd to me,
Armes y fenge for loue of [þe];
& when ich hadde armes take,
Þou seyd þou noldest me for-sake,

Þou noldest þi loue werne to me;
& nov ich am her comen to þe:
Dere leman, y prey þe
Þi wille þatow tel to me.' 1130

C. 793. Felice answerd swiþe an heye,
'No rape þe nouȝt so, sir Gij;
Ȝete nartow nouȝt y-preysed so,
Þat me ne may finde oþer mo;
Orped þou art and of grete miȝt, 1135
Gode kniȝt & ardi in fiȝt:
& ȝif ich þe hadde mi loue y-ȝeue,
To welden it while þat y liue,
Sleuþe þe schuld ouercome:
Namore wostow of armes loue, 1140
No comen in turnament no in fiȝt.
So amerous þou were anon riȝt.

To his lemmañ he is weƚƚ-com̄e, Felice,
And him to kisse she maketħ hir bowñe.
The Erle proferd him siluer and golde,
And noothing therof take he wolde.
Fuƚƚ gladde is his fader of him
And his moder and aƚƚ his kynne, and his father and mother.
And aƚƚ the folke of that Contree
Were gladde him for to see.

On a daye he is to Felice goo, Guy visited Felice,
And fuƚƚ louyngly he seitħ hir too:
'I am com̄e as thou may see.
My lif y haue, lemmañ, thurgħ thee:
Ne were thou, lemmañ, dede y were,
My body destroied and leide on bere.
Armes y toke for loue of the, and reminded her
Thoo thy wille thou tolde me,
That, whan y had armes take,
Thou woldest not than me for-sake.
And thou hast herde me preised bee
In many astraunge contree:
Thy loue shuld not me bee werned,
For y haue it, me thinketħ, ayerned.
Sweting, nowe y am com̄e to the, of her promise.
Thy wille therof thou telle me.'

Felice answerd swithe oñ higħe, [p. 36]
And iaped not witħ sir Guye:
'Yet art thou not preised so, But Felice protested
Bot y kanne fynde suche other moo.
Stronge thou art and of grete migħte,
Good and hardy and kene in figħte:
And if y the had my loue yiue, that she would not marry him,
And wille it the whiles y liue,
Sleuthe wolde the so ou*er*ecom̄e,
That thou woldest nomore armes doon,
Ne com̄e in t*ur*nement nor in figħte.
So amerous thou wolde bee anone rigħte.

Y schuld misdo, so þenkeþ me,
& miche agilt oȝaines te,
& ich þi manschip schuld schone, 1145
Wit[1] me eu*er* more to wone.

[1] *t* over an erasure.

C. 807. Turnb. p. 38, l. 955.

Gij,' quod Felice, 'forhele y nille,
Ac al þe soþe ichil þe telle:
Þou art me leuest of oþ*er* alle,
For þi 'leman' ichil the calle; 1150
Ac mi loue no schaltow haue
For noþing þatow may craue,
Er þou perles holden be
& best doand in þis cuntre,
Þat nowhar bi lond no w[e]ter 1155
No be founde þi beter;
& when þou art hold best doinde
In armes þat animan mai finde,
Þat vnder heuen þi beter no be,
Mi loue ichil þan grau*n*ti þe.' 1160

C. 821. MS. 113v. col. 1.

When Gij herd Felice speke so, 1165
Wel depe he gan to sike þo:
'Now ichot, þou scornest me:
Swiche answer ichaue of þe,
Þat y schuld be þe best y-teld,
Þat be fiȝtand wiþ spere & scheld. 1170
Swiche no miȝt y neuer werþe
To be þe best on þis erþe[2];
Into oþer cuntres ichil go,
For þi loue to wirche me wo.
For dout of deþ nil y nouȝt fle: 1175
ȝif y dye, it is for þe.'

[2] *on þis erþe* on an erasure.

C. 831. Turnb. p. 39, l. 981.

Sir Gij of hir toke his leue,
& kist hir wiþ wepeand eye.

I shuld misdoo, as thinketh me, — though
And gretly offende ayenst the.

Guy,' quoth she, 'concele y nelle, — he was so dear to her,
Bot ah the sothe y shah the telle:
Thou art me leeuest of other alle,
And my lemman y shah the calle; 1150
Bot my loue thou shalt not haue
For noo thing that thou kan craue,
Vnto tyme thou so perilous holde bee — till he was thought
And best doyng in euery Contree,
That neither by londe nor by water 1155
Bee founde in any wise thy better;
And whan thou art holde best doynge — the best knight under heaven.
In armes that man may fynde,
That vnder heuen thy better ne bee,
My loue than y shah g*ra*unte the, 1160
For to doo with me thi wille
Eerly and late, loude and stille.
In other wise, how so it goo, [p. 37]
My loue ne shah thou haue ell*is* neu*er*e the moo.'

WHANNE Guy herde Felice speke so, 1165
Fuh depe he ganne sighe tho: — Guy felt inclined to despair,
'Now wote y weh, thou skornest me,
Whan y suche answer haue of the,
That y shuld the best bee in felde
In fighting with spere and shelde; 1170
And so good might y neu*er*e worthe
To bee the best vpon the erthe;
And in-to straunge londe wende y shah, — but determined to go abroad again to risk new perils.
For thy loue to werke woo ou*er*e ah.
For doubte of deth y woh not flee: 1175
If y dye, it is for the.'
Guy of hir toke his leeue on hie, — He took leave of her,
And kissed hir with weping yie.

Unto his in he goþ snelle;
Þer nil he no lenger duelle. 1180
To þerl he wil gon,
& tak his leue sone anon.

C. 835. Gij him com to court þore,
& aliȝt atte halle dore;
& to þerl he went þo, 1185
& schewed him wat he wald do.
'Sir erl,' quod Gij, 'y bid þe,
Leue to wende ȝif þou me.
Ouer þe se ichil now wende;
God to gode hauen me sende! 1190
Time it is þat ich fond
To winne priis *in* vncouþe lond;
Al þe glader ȝe mow be
ȝif we of armes preised be.
& ȝif þou hast folk of grete miȝt, 1195
It is te gret worþschip, y pliȝt,
For al þe more men schal þe dout
Wiþ-in þi lond & eke wiþ-out.'

C. 847. ¶ 'Sir Gij,' quod þerl þo,
'Faileþ þe out þat y mai do? 1200
Gold oþer siluer, oþ*er* heye stede?
To passe þe se hastow no nede.
Turnb. p. 40, l. 1007. Sir Gij,' he seyd, 'lete ben al þis,
Anouȝ þe worþ þat þe nede is;
& to pleyn vnder þe linde, 1205
Þe hert to chacen and þe hinde:
Of al þinges þou schalt haue plente.
Bileue at hom, sir Gi, wiþ me.
MS. 113v. col. 2. We schul wende boþe y-fere
To play bi wode & bi riuer; 1210
Al bi times þou miȝt wende;
ȝete no hastow ben here a moneþ to þende[1].'
¶ 'Miche þank, sir,' quod Gij þo;
'For soþe so no may [y] nouȝt do.'

[1] *þende* added over the line.

To his Inne he gooth, as y you telle,
And there he doth not longe duelle. 1180
To the Erle he gan goon
To take of him his leeue anoon.
Nowe is Guy to Courte come
To take his leeue all and some.
To the Erle Rohaude he yede thoo, 1185 and of Earl Rohaut,
And tolde him what he wolde doo.
'Sir Erle,' quoth Guy, 'y pray the,
Leeue to wende that thou yiue me. asking his leave again.
God to good hauen me sende:
Ouer the see y shall wende. 1190
Tyme it is that y fonde
To wynne pris in straunge londe;
For all the gladder ye may bee [p. 38]
That men of armes doo preise me;
For if ye haue folke of grete mighte, 1195
It is to you worship, y you plighte;
For the more men woll the doubte
Within thy londe and withoute.'
'Sir Guy,' quoth the Erle tho, The Earl tried hard
'Failleth the aught that y may doo, 1200
Golde or siluer or highe stede,
To passe the see yf thou haue nede?
Sir Guy, lete bee all this,
And thou shalt haue all that nedefull is,
To chase the herte and the hynde, 1205 to persuade Guy to remain at home,
And to pley vnder the wode lynde:
Of all thinge thou shalt haue plentee,
And abide at home, y bidde the.
We shull wende bothe in feere
And pleye vs in wode and by Ryueer. 1210
All by tymes thou may ou*er*e wende:
Thou hast not soio*ur*ned a moneth to the ende.'
'Mikel thanke,' quoth Guy tho; but unsuccessfully.
'For sothe so may it not goo.'

His leue he toke wiþ-outen more; 1215
Þerl it of-þouȝt swiþe sore.
C. 865. He goþ him to his fader þo,
Þat for his wending was ful wo:
'Gon, fader,' quod he, 'ich-ille;
For noþing leten y nille; 1220
ȝif me leue, icham al ȝare
Ouer þe se for to fare,
To winne p*ris* and los al-so,
So ȝong man schal i*n* ȝouþe do.
Long to bileuen in þis cunt[r]e 1225
Nis it nouȝt worþ for me;
For ȝong man þat is miȝti
In his ȝouþe schal fondi,
Turnb. p. 41, l. 1033. So þat men may hi*m* i*n* erþe preyse,
And in eld liue in mirþe & ayse. 1230
Þer-whiles icham ȝong & liȝt,
Los ichil winne bi mi miȝt.'
C. 879. 'Leue sone,' he seyd, 'leue þ*at* þouȝt:
Bi mi wil schaltow wende nouȝt.
Þou schalt bileue here wiþ me; 1235
Al þe bliþer we wille be.'
'Leue sone,' his moder hi*m* sede,
'Þou do bi þi faders rede:
Soiourne wiþ ous to ȝer mo,
Y rede þe, sone, þat it be so. 1240
Anoþer ȝer þou miȝt ou*er* fare.
Bot þou bileue, y dye for care,
For we ne haue sonis no mo:
ȝif we þe schul now for-go,
Glad no worþ we neuer mo, 1245
[1] *o* of *ous* all but illegible. For sorwe schul ous[1] selue slo.'
¶ Gij answerd wiþ þat speche,
'Fader, god y þe biteche,
& mi leue moder al-so;
For hastiliche ichil nov go.' 1250

His leeue he toke withoute more; 1215
The erle it forthoughte fuH sore.
He gooth him to his fader thoo,
That for his goyng was fuH woo:
'Fader,' quoth Guy, 'goo y wille:
For noo thing y woH lette by skille; 1220
Yiue me leeue, y woH not spare
Ouer the See for to fare,
To wynne pris and losse also, [p. 39]
As a yonge mañ in his youghte shuld doo.
To abide longe in this contree 1225
It is not worthe noo thing to me;
For a yonge mañ that is mighti
In his youthe shuld make bowne and redy,
So that in age he may bee preised,
And so to honour to bee arreised. 1230
Whiles that y am yonge and lighte,
My name y shaH encrese by my mighte.'

He bade farewell also to his parents.

'LEEF SOÑE,' he seide, 'lete bee that thoughte:
Yet shaH thou wende noughte.
Thou shalt abide here with me; 1235
AH the gladder y may bee.'
'Leef soñe,' his moder him seide,
'Doo by thy faders rede:
Abide with vs here to yere mo,
I rede the, soñe, thou so doo. 1240
Another yere thou may ou*er*e fare.
And bot thou doo thus, y dye for care,
For we ne haue soñes moo:
And yf we shuld nowe the forgoo,
Gladde ne shuld we neu*er*e bee, 1245
Bot for sorowe oure self slee.'
Guy answerd with that speche,
'Fader, god y you beteche,
And my moder y doo also;
For hastely y woH goo.' 1250

His father, and mother, both tried to dissuade him, without success.

C. 899. Gij forþ goþ, & þai bileue þare,
þat for hym hadde miche care.
MS. 114r. col. 1. To þe se he is y-come,
Gode winde he haþ atte frome.
Turnb. p. 42, l. 1059. Y-comen he is in-to Normundye, 1255
Kniȝtschip he schewed on hye.
þennes he went in-to Speyne;
Nis turnament non *in*-to Almeyne,
þat Gij no haþ þer-at y-be,
& michel y-preised so is he. 1260
þennes to Lombardye he went;
þer ben þe iustes & þe turnament,
þer he dede him preyse miche,
þe Lombardes hi*m* loued inliche;
He was large, curteys, & fre: 1265
C. 918. Of miche miȝt so was he.
Of an vnsele y may ȝou telle,
& ȝe wil a stounde[1] duelle:
As he cam fram a turnament
þat was biside Bonevent, 1270
In þe bodi wou*n*ded he was:
þat sore hi*m* greued[2] no wonder it nas.
¶ þan bithouȝt hi*m* þe douk Otoun,[3]
þat vnwrast was, & feloun,
þat he wald ben awreke þ*a*t day 1275
Of Gij of Warwike, ȝif he may;
For he him wounded in a turnam*e*nt,
As ichaue herd telle verrament;
þer-fore Gij him was swiþe loþ,
& wel depe he swore his oþ 1280
Turnb. p. 43, l. 1085. þat he of him awreke wald be
Er þan he wende out of þ*a*t cuntre.
C. 927. When þe douke Ot*u*s y-seye þat cas,
þat Gij so sore wou*n*ded was,
þerl Lambard he cleped to him 1285
(A kniȝt he was stout & grim),

[1] MS. *astounde*

[2] The second *e* of *greued* over the line.

[3] MS. *of toun.*

Guy gootħ forthħ and theim̄ lefte there,
That for him in grete sorowe were.
To the see he is com̄e, [p. 40] — Guy crossed the sea again,
Good wynde he hathħ nom̄e.
Com̄e he is in-to Normandye, 1255 — showed his prowess in Normandy,
Knyghthode he sechethħ fułł hastily.
Fro thense he wente him in-to Ispaigne — Spain,
And so fro thense in-to Almaigne. — Germany,
At eu*er*y turnement Guy hathħ bee,
And moche preised ou*er*e ałł is he. 1260
Fro thense to lombardie he is wente: — and Lombardy,
Ther' were ioustes and t*ur*nemente,
There they did him preise myche, — winning much love and praise.
The lombardes him loued in-liche;
For he was curteys, large and free, 1265
And of moche mighł and grete bountee.

Nowe of a straunge case y shałł you telle,
Ye that wołł a while duelle,
That Guy befełł com̄yng' fro a t*ur*nement — But at a tournament near
That was withoute Boneuent: 1270 — Benevento,
In the body he wounded was: — Guy was wounded.
Sore it him greued, noo wonder nas.
That aspied weł the Duke Otoun), — Duke Otoun,
That was vntruste and feloun),
That he wolde bee a-wreke that daie 1275
On Guy of Warrewik, if he maye;
For he him wounded at a to*ur*nement,
As y before tolde v*er*raiment;
Therfor' Guy was yet[1] him lothe, — who hated Guy,
And fułł depe he swore his othe 1280 — [1] *was* struck out after *yet*.
That he wolde on him wroken) bee
Or he wente oute of that contree.
Whanne Duke Otes wiste that caas, [p. 41] — saw his chance
That Guy so sore wounded was,
Than the Erle Lambard he clepid him to, 1285 — and called Earl Lambard
That good knyghł was, and bade him goo

[1] looks like *fiztene*

& fiftene[1] kniztes in his compeynie,
þat were strong men and hardie.
On a dern stede he dede he*m* hide,
þer as Gij schuld cu*m* ride; 1290

C. 935. 'Lordinges,' þan seyd þe douk Otoun,[2]
'Under-stond to mi resoun:
Mine men ze beþ & to me swore,
Omage ze schul me þer-fore.
Mine hest ze schul ful-fille, 1295
þat ich zou bid, wiþ gode wille.

[2] *of toun* MS.

MS. 114v. col. 2.

Me to wreken ze schul go
Of a treytour þat is mi fo,
þat is y-comen vp mi lond
(Wer he þenkeþ to bri*n*g me an hond), 1300
Gij of Warwike þ*a*t wou*n*ded is
Wiþ a swerd þurch þe bodi y-wis.
On þe halidom ze schul me sweri:
In þe forest of Pleyns þ*a*t is so miri,
[3] *& per* MS.
þer[3] ze schul zou al hide, 1305
þer Gij of Warwike schal cu*m* ride:

Turnb. p. 44, l. 1111.

His bodi oliue ze schul me bring,
And slen his feren eld & zing.
Y schal him in mi prisou*n* do;
Out no comeþ he neuer mo. 1310

[4] *and wo* indistinct, but perfectly certain.

Wiþ sorwe and wo[4] he schal þ*er* ende:
C. 956. þennes no schal he neuer wende.'
'Sir,' þai seyd, 'we schul go,
& al þine hest we schul do.'
þai dede hem arme swiþe wel 1315
Boþe in iren & in stiel;
Vnto þe pas þai wente*n* snelle,
& þ*er* þai houed swiþe stille,
As Gij schuld cu*m* sone.
No wist he nouzt of þat tresone, 1320
No of þat sorwe neue*r* the mo,
þat him was comand to;

Witħ .xv. knygħtes stalworthe, and 15 knights,
That eu*er*icħ was his armes worthe.
In a priue stede he did him hyde,
Ther' Guye of Warrewik shuld com̄e ride.
'Lordinges,' seide the Duke Otoun',
'Vnderstonde, sires, to my Reesoun':
My men' ye bee aŧŧ to me swore,
Holde ye shuŧŧ with me therfore.
Myn̄ heste doo ye shaŧŧ,
That y to you now telle woŧŧ.
Me to awreke ye shuŧŧ goo
On a trayto*ur* that is my foo,
That is com̄e in-to my londe
(Werre he me thinketħ to werke witħ honde),
Guy of Warrewik that wounded is
With a swerde thurgħ the body ywis.
On the halidom̄e ye shuŧŧ swere
That in the forest that is fuŧŧ neere, to lie in ambush
There ye shuŧŧ you aŧŧ huyde:
As Guy of Warrewik shaŧŧ com̄e ride, for Guy,
His body on lyue ye shaŧŧ me bringe, slay his followers,
Slee his felawes olde and yinge.
I shaŧŧ him doo in my prison';
Ne shaŧŧ he neu*er*e com̄e to Raumpson'. and bring Guy alive.
Witħ sorowe and woo he shaŧŧ ende:
Ne shaŧŧ he neu*er*e thense wende.'
'Sir,' quotħ they, 'we woŧŧ goo, [p. 42]
Aŧŧ thy co*m*maundement for to doo.'
They doo theim arme swithe wele
Bothe in yren̄ and in stele.
To their' place they wende snelle, They lay in ambush
And houed there softe and stille,
As Guy of Warrewik shuld com̄e
Not knowyng' of that wicked treason', for the unsuspecting Guy,
Ne of the sorowe neu*er*e the moo,
That him was com̄yng' to;

For al his felawes þat gode were,
Al he for-les hem þere;
& his owhen liif he hadde for-lore, 1325
No hadde goddes help ben bifore,
Þurch þe traitours þat were her fon,
C. 964. Þat kept hem þere for to slon.
Now comeþ Gij soft rideing
Opon a mulet ambling. 1330
His wounde him greueþ swiþe sore,
& smert him euer þe lenger þe more.
Turnb. p. 45, l. 1137. In pais he wende for to wende,
Ac þe traitours Lombardes vnhende,
Þe helmes þai seyen briȝt schine, 1335
Þe stedes nyen, and togider whine.
'God,' quod Gij, 'we ben y-nome!
Al we be ded þurch tresone.'
Sir Gij of þat mulet aliȝt,
& asked his stede, his armes briȝt, 1340
MS. 114v. col. 1. & seyd to his felawes snelle,
[1] looks like *ded* with the second *d* erased. 'Dere we schul our deþ[1] selle.
Our deþ is now al bispeke,
Bot we ous manliche awreke;
Ich kepe him selue, seþþe it so is, 1345
& ichil, while y liue, y-wis:
So dere so y may, ich wille
To þe treytours mi liif selle.'
C. 985. ¶ 'Sir,' seyd Herhaud þo,
'For godes loue hennes þou go. 1350
For þine loue we schul her dye,
& defende þis pas, y seye:
Leuer ous were her-on be ded,
Þan þou wer ded in our ferred.'
¶ Þan answerd Gij anon riȝt, 1355
As gode kniȝt & ful of miȝt:
[2] *Iichil* MS. 'ȝif ȝe dye, ichil[2] al-so;
Nil ich neuer fram ȝou go!'

For aꝉ his felawes that good were,
Eu*er*ychooꝏ he loste thañ there,
And his owne lif had forlore,
Ne were godd*is* helpe before,
Thurgħ the traito*ur*s that were his fooꝏ,
That kepte him for to slee anooꝏ.
Now com̄eth Guy softe riding[1] — who came riding on a mule,
Vpoꝏ a liteꝉ mule ambling[1].
His wounde greued him fuꝉ sore, — suffering much from his wound.
And eu*er*e the lenger smerted the more.
In pees he wened for to wende,
As the traitours were redy him to shende. — Seeing their hostile array,
The helmes they sawe brigħte shyne,
And anone after befelle theim pyne.
'ALLAS,' QUOTH Guy, 'y am nom̄e!
Aꝉ we beeꝏ dede thurgħ treasouñe.' — he suspected treason,
Guy of that Mule aligħte,
And on his stede lepte, and gaꝏ his armes rigħte, — armed himself.
And seide to his felawes aꝉ:
'Fuꝉ deere oure liff*is* we selle shaꝉ.
Oure detħ is here as nowe, y speke, [p. 43]
Bot we manly vs awreke. — and exhorted his companions
Eche helpe him self, nowe it thus is,
And y shaꝉ doo what y may ywis:
As dere as y may, y wolle — to sell their lives dearly.
To the traito*ur*s lombardes my lif selle.'
Than seide heraude thoo:
'For godd*is* loue hense thou goo. — Herhaud conjured him to consult his own safety and leave them,
For thy loue we woꝉ dye,
Or defende this passage trulye.'

Than Guy answerd anone rigħt,
As a good knygħt of mikeꝉ migħt:
'Yf ye deye, y shaꝉ also; — but Guy would not flinch
I woꝉ neu*er*e fro you goo.'

C. 997. Turnb. p. 46, l. 1163.

Wiþ þat come a Lombard ride,
A modi man & ful of pride. 1360
'Gij,' quod he, 'ȝeld þe anon!
Ȝe ben ded now euerichon;
To þe douke we han trewþe pliȝt
To bring him þi bodi þis niȝt.'
With þat ich word wel smert 1365
Gij him smot vn-to þe hert;
No spard he for no drede,
Þat ded he feld him *in* þe mede.
'Bi þe trewþe y schal mi lema*n* ȝeld,
To day no schaltow þi trewþe held!' 1370
Anoþ*er* Lombard he smot anon,
Þurch þe bodi þe swerd gan gon:
'No þou, treytour, no schalt me lede
To þe douke that is ful of qued;
To his presou*n* no worþ y for þe brouȝt.' 1375
Herhaud smot anoþ*er* and spared nouȝt
Þurch þe bodi his swerd glod,
Ded he fel wiþ-outen abod.

C. 1015. ¶ Þan com Torald, a gode kniȝt,
Swiþe gode & hardi in fiȝt; 1380
Wiþ a Lombard þer he mett,
& so wele his strok he sett
Þat his heued fram þe bodi flei;
He ȝede him laweliche neye.

Turnb. p. 47, l. 1189. MS. 114v. col. 2.

Wiþ þat come Urri prikeinde 1385
(A better kniȝt no miȝt man finde),
A Lombard he smot þo,
Þat þurch his bodi þe swerd gan go;
So he smot him, for soþ to say,
Þat ded he feld him in þe way. 1390
Seþþe he seyd, 'þurch no toun
Schal ȝe ous lede to no prisoun.
Than miȝt men se[1] fiȝt aginne,
Heuedes cleue vnto þe chinne.

[1] *fi* expunged before *se*.

WITH THAT cõme a Lombard ride, — A Lombard who called upon
As a man of grete pride. 1360
'Guy,' quoth he, 'yelde the anone, — Guy to surrender,
Or ye bee dede eu*er*ychõne.
To the Duke Otes y haue the plighte,
Thy body to bringe him anone righte.'
The Lombard was hote withoute lette, 1365
And Guy him hath with harme grette; — was instantly slain by him,
He ne spared for noo drede,
That deed he felled him in the mede.
'By the trouth,' quoth Guy, 'that y shall my le*m*man yelde,
Thou shalt not thy trouth to the Duke holde.' 1370
To another lombarde he smote anone, — and so was another.
That thurgh the body his swerde gañ gooñe:
'Nor thou, traito*ur*, thou ne shall me lede
To thy Duke that is so full of quede,
Nor to his prisoun for the bee broughte.' [p. 44] 1375
Heraude smote to another and spared noughte, — Herhaud,
That thurgh the swerde glode:
Deed he felled him withoute bode.
Than cõme Toraude, a good knyghte: — Torald,
Swithe good he was in fighte. 1380
With a lombarde he so mette,
And so well he his stroke besette,
That the heed fro the body fleighe:
He smote his shuldres alowe so neighe.
With that cõme Vrry priking 1385 — and Urri
(A better knyght might noman fynde),
To a lombarde he smote so,
That thurgh the body his swerde gan goo: — all slew their men.
So he smote him, the sothe to sey,
That deed he felled him in the wey; 1390
And than he seide: 'thou ne Otoun
Ne shall vs bringe in-to yo*ur* prison.'
There might men see fighte begynne, — Fierce was the fight.
Hedes clouen downe to the chynne.

Euerich þat day þat Gij oftoke, 1395
Sone anon his liif forsoke.
Sum he smot opon þe hode,
At þe girdel þe swerd astode;
And sum he smot þurch þe side,
Þat miȝt he neuer go no ride. 1400
Was þer non that miȝt astond
Dint þat come of Gyes hond.
So miȝti strokes *þer* wer ȝiuen,
Þat strong schaftes al to-driuen;[1]
No was þer non *in* þat ferrede 1405
Þat of his liif him miȝt adrede.

[1] MS. *alto driuen*

C. 1033. ¶ Wiþ þat come ride þerl Lambard,
A sterne kniȝt and a Lombard;
Vrri anon he slouȝ þar,
It oþouȝt Gij þo he was war; 1410
Wiþ þerl Lambard he wald iusti,
& awreke þe gode Vrri.
Wiþ swiche hete he smot him to,
His armour no was him worþ a slo;
Þurch out his hert þe lau*n*ce he bar, 1415
Adoun he feld hi*m* ded riȝt þar.
Wiþ þat him come forþ Hougoun,
Þat was þe doukes neve Otoun:
A kniȝt he was of gret miȝt,
Swiþe gode & hardi in fiȝt. 1420
Torald[2] he haþ aqueld;
Herhaud anon þat biheld.
When Herhaud[3] y-seye þis,
Þat he doun fel & ded he is,
For his deþ he was sori: 1425
Him to awreke he haþ gret hy.
Neuer ȝete so sori he no was,
To-ward Hugoun he made a ras,
Als a lyoun he heyed him fast,
Þat his prey wold haue on hast. 1430

Turnb. p. 48, l. 1215.

[2] *torlard* MS.

[3] *her herhaud* MS.

MS. 115r. col. 1.

AH that Guy with his swerde toke, 1395
Sone anone his lif forsoke.
Some he smote vpon the hode,
That at the girdelstede the swerde abode;
Some he smote thurgh the side,
That they ne might neuere more goo nor ryde. 1400
Was there noon that might stonde
The dynte that come oute of his honde.
So mighti strokes ther were yiue,
That the stronge shaftes aH to-dryue.
There was noon in that stede [p. 45] 1405
Bot of his lif he was adredde.
With that come ride the Erle Lambard,
A sterne knyght and a Lombard;
Vrry he hath sleyne there,
That forthoughte Guy whan he therof was ware: 1410
With the Erle lambard he did iousty,
To awreke the deth of good Vrry.
With suche an hete he smote him to,
That aH his armes auailled him not a sloo;
Thurgh his herte the launce he bare, 1415
And adown he felled him dede there.
With that cometh forth hugon,
He was the Dukes Nieue Otoun:
Knyght he was of grete mighte,
Swithe hardy and good in fighte. 1420
Toraude there he hath felled,
And to deth stiked him thurgh his sheelde.
And whan heraude saw that cas,
That Toraulde so foule sleyne was,
For his deth he was sorye: 1425
Him to awreke he doth him hye.
Neuere so sory he was,
Toward hugon he made a chas.

Guy's dints were heavy.

But Earl Lambard

slew Urri,

but was at once

slain by Guy.

Hugoun, nephew of Otoun,

slew Torald,

but was in revenge

Þurch þe body he him smot
Wiþ gret strengþe, god ytot,
Þat biforn þe Lombardes alle
Of his hors ded he gan falle.

C. 1053. ¶ When dan Gauter þat y-seye, 1435
To Herhaud he stert wel an heye,
Turnb. p. 49, l. 1241. And wiþ his swerd he smot hi*m* so
Þat his hauberk rent ato;
Þurch his bodi þat swerd ȝede,
Al þai wende þat he wer ded. 1440
¶ When Gij seye Herhaud y-feld,
To-hewen his hauberk & his scheld
(& of his hors feld he was,
As ded man lay on þe gras;
He seye þe blod þat cam hi*m* fro), 1445
Wonder him þouȝt, & seyd þo:
'Þou lording, to þe y sigge,
His deþ þou schalt wel sore abigge!
So mot ich eu*er* word speke,
Mi maisters deþ ichil awreke, 1450
& for a couward ich held þe:
Þou slouȝ him, & lete me be.
Bi hi*m* þat made sonne & mone,
[1] MS. *sonne.* Þou schalt it wite swiþe sone,[1]
Þat tow schalt it biȝelp nouȝt 1455
Þ*a*t he is to deþ y-brouȝt.'
¶ Gij wiþ spors smot þe stede,
As a man þat hadde nede,
Þat fire vnder þe fet aros;
Nas þer non þat him agros. 1460
Wiþ al his miȝt he smot hi*m* to,
Wel euen he clef his scheld þo,
Turnb. p. 50, l. 1267. Þurch his bodi þe swerd he þriste:
Þo at arst fiȝt him liste.
In þe sond he feld hi*m* doun, 1465
& bede him Cristes malisoun,

Thurgh the body he him smote — smitten down by Herhaud.
With so grete strength, god it wote,
That there before the Lombardes all
Of his hors he did him dede fall.
Whan Danz Gauter that sighe — 1435 Don Gauter
(A knyght he was of herte highe),
Ouere thwert[1] he smote to Heraude so [p. 46]
That all his hauberk he rende thoo;
Thurgh heraudes body the swerde yede, — struck down Herhaud.
All they wende he had bee dede. — 1440
Whan Guy sawe heraude felde, — Guy seeing this disaster
To-hewe his hauberk and his shelde
(And of his hors felled he was
As a dede man vpon the gras),
And sawe the blode that ranne him fro, — 1445
Wonder he thoughte, and seide thoo:
'Thou lordyng, to the y seye,
His deth thou shalt full dere abeye! — swore revenge,

And by him that made sone and mone,
Thou shalt wite swithe sone
That thou shalt it forgete nought — 1455
That thou him hast to deth brought.'
Guy with spores smote his stede,
As a man that had grete nede. — fought like a madman,

Than with all his mighte he smote him to,
Full euen he karffe his herte in two. — and slew Don Gauter.

And ther in grene he felled him downe, — 1465
And bade him Cristes malesoune,

[1] MS. *thewert*.

For þat he wald Herhaud slen,
And lete him oliues ben.

C. 1067. ¶ Now is Gij[1] wel hard bifalle,
Y-lorn he haþ his felawes alle ; 1470
So sori he is, he not what to do,
He no haþ no wiȝt to bimen him to.

[1] MS. repeats *is gij*, but the second *is gij* is underdotted.

MS. 115r. col. 2. Bot þre Lombard[es] oliue *þer* nere,
Opon Gij hastiliche þai were ;
þe tvay ben hole & sounde, 1475
þe þridde hadde þurch þe bodi a wou*n*de.
¶ Gij þat on wiþ his swerd rauȝt,
His heued of fleye wiþ þ*a*t drauȝt.
Þan com prikeing dan Gwissard,
A duhtti kniȝt and no couward. 1480

C. 1077. ¶ 'Gij,' quod he, 'ȝeld now þe !
It no may no noþ*er* be :
On þe erþe liþe þi scheld to-dreued,
Nouȝt o pece is wiþ oþ*er* bileued,
& þine helme is al to-hewe,[2] 1485

[2] MS. *alto hewe.*

þine hauberk to-rent þ*a*t was newe ;
& wounded þou art, þou miȝt well se,
Long miȝt tow nouȝt oliues be.
To day ichil ȝeld þe to þe douk Otoun,
& he þe schal do in his prisoun. 1490

Turnb. p. 51, l. 1293.

C. 1089. Þan seyd Gij, 'Gwichard, y nille :
To ȝeld me to þe is nouȝt mi wille,
þer-whiles ichaue mi swerd y-grou*n*de,
& mi bodi wiþouten wounde.'
Gwichard smot Gij wiþ michel miȝt 1495
Opon þe helme þat schon so briȝt,
þat a quarter out fleye ;
þe kniȝt was boþe queynt & sleye.
Opon his scholder þat swerd glod,
Of his hauberk it tok a pece brod ; 1500
God saued Gij þat he nas ded,
No for þat dint hadde no qued.

For that he did heraude slee,
And lete him on lyue bee.
NOWE IS Guy fuꝗ harde befalle,
Loste he hatꝗ his felawes alle; 1470
So sory he is, he ne wote what to doo,
And he[1] woteth to whom he may bemene hym to.
Bot three of the Lombardes on lyue ther were,
That vpon Guy thoughte grete deere.
Tweyn of theim were hoole and sounde, [p. 47] 1475
The thridde thurgꝗ the body had a wounde.
Guy wiꝗ his swerde that oon raughte,
That his hede fleighe of wiꝗ a draughte.
Wiꝗ that come priking Dañ Guychard,
He was a fuꝗ proude Lombarde. 1480
'Guy,' he seide, 'yelde the to me!
Thou seest it woꝗ noon other bee.
Aꝗ thy meñ fro the been refte:
Sauf thy self is noon lefte,
And thyn helme is aꝗ to-hewe, 1485
Thyn hauberk to-tore that was newe;
Wounded thou art, weꝗ y see,
That longe thou maist not alyue bee.
This daie y shaꝗ the bringe to Duke Otoun,
And he the shaꝗ doo in his prisoun.' 1490
Than seide Guy, 'Guychard, y nelle
Yelde me to Otes by my wille,
While y haue my swerde grounde
And my body stiffe to sitte astounde.'
Guychard smote Guy wiꝗ grete mighte 1495
Vpon his helme that shone brighte,
That a quarter awey fleighe;
The knyghꝗ was stronge, hardy, and sleighe.
Vpoñ the shoulder the swerde glode,
Of the hauberk he toke an handbrode; 1500
God saued Guy that he was not dede,
Ne for that stroke had noo quede.

[1] *ne?*

Three Lombards attack him at once.

Don Gwichard

summoned him to surrender,

and on his refusal

dealt him a terrible blow.

God saved Guy then!

C. 1103. When Gij seye hi*m* so smite,[1]
He was wroþ, ȝe may wele wite;
Gwichard he wald fond to smite 1505
Wiþ his swerd þat wold wele bite;
To hi*m* he smot swiþe smert
þurch þe bodi ful ney þe[2] hert:
þat gode swerd þurchim þrang,
Gwichard wald abide nouȝt lang; 1510
He turned his stede & gan to fle,
& Gij after hi*m*, bi mi leute.
Gode was þe hors þat Gwichard rod on,
& so fast his stede gan gon,
Turnb. p. 52, l. 1319. þat Gij miȝt him nouȝt atake, 1515
þer-fore he gan sorwe make.
MS. 115v. col. 1. Gwichard fleye in his way
Toward Paui, so swiþe he may.
C. 1115. þe douk Otous fram hunting com,
& with him erles mani on; 1520
A kniȝt he seye cum prikeing,
His armes to-rent, his woundes bledeing.
þe douk Otous duelled aþrowe,
What he hadde Gwichard y-knowe:
Wele he semed man aferd, 1525
þat hard tiding hadde y-herd.
Wiþ þat is Gwichard to hi*m* come;
þe douke hi*m* oxed atte frome,
'Gwichard, who haþ wretþed þe,
& where hastow i*n* bateyle be? 1530
¶ Where is Gij? is he nome?
Liues or deþ[es] do hi*m* come.'
C. 1127. 'Ichil ȝou sigge sikerly
So michel so y wot of Gij:
At a ford we him mett, 1535
& strongliche we him bisett,
Bot his bodi no nom we nouȝt,
Ac al to deþ we ben y-brouȝt;

[1] The *i* of *smite* added over the line.

[2] MS. *neyþe þe.*

To Guychard he fondeth to smyte,
And his swerde wolh aughte byte.

To him he striketh swithe smerte [p. 48] — He routed Gwichard,
Thurgh the body wel nyghe the herte:
That good swerde in he thurste, — wounded him sore,
Guychard to abide noo lenger had luste, 1510
Bot tourned his hors and gan to flee,
And Guy after him faste rode he.
Good was that hors that Guychard rode on, — and sent him flying
Guy wente ayene and lete him goon:
For that he ne might him ouere-take, 1515
Ful grete sorowe Guy gan make.
GUYCHARD fleyingt toke his wey
Toward Pauy, as swithe as he may. — toward Pavia.
The Duke Otes fro huntyngt come, — Duke Otous, returning from hunting,
And with him Barons and knyghtis many oone. 1520
A knyght he sawe come prikingt
With armes rende, his woundes bledyngt.
The Duke Otes duelled athrowe, — recognized Gwichard,
Tyl Guychard he might knowe:
Him thoughte he semed a man aferde, 1525
Or that harde tidynges had herde.
With that is Guychard to theim come;
The Duke him asked ful sone, — and asked
'Sey, Guychard, who hath wrathed the?
Where hast thou in bataille bee? 1530
Where is Guy? is he nome? — if Guy were taken.
Quykke or dede lete him to me come.'
'I shal you telle sikirly
As moche as y wote of Guy:
At a Forde we him mette, 1535
And strongly we him besette.
And his body ne toke we nought: [p. 49] — Gwichard related their disasters.
Al we been to deth brought;

Bot icham passed as ȝe may se.'
'Mi nevou Hougou*n*, whar is he?' 1540
Turnb. p. 53, l. 1345. Quod þe douk Otous, 'tel me raþe.'
'Sir, in þe sond he liþe, & þ*a*t is scaþe.'
'& þerl Lambard, þat gode kniȝt?'
'Ded he liþe in þat fiȝt.'
When douk Ot*us* herd þat, 1545
Sori he was & no-þing glad:
Þat he haþ his folk for-lore,
Sorweful man he was þ*er*fore.
Neyȝe his hert brast for mode,
[1] MS. *For sorwe &.* & for sorwe[1] ȝede ner wode, 1550
When he wist his folk y-slawe,
[2] MS. *oliue.* & þurch him brouȝt o liue[2] dawe.

C. 1143. Now haþ Gij miche sorwe made,
For his felawes he is vnglade.
'Allas,' quod Gii, 'felawes dere! 1555
So wele doand kniȝtes ȝe were.
Al to iuel it fel to me,
Felice, þo y was sent to serue þe;
For þi loue, Felice, the feir may,
Þe flour of kniȝtes is sleyn þis day. 1560
MS. 115v. col. 2. Ac for þou art a wiman,
Y no can nouȝt blame þe for þan;
For þe last no worþ y nouȝt
Þat wimen han to gronde y-brouȝt.
Ac alle oþer may bi me, 1565
ȝif þai wil, y-warned be.
Turnb. p. 54, l. 1371. Allas, Herhaud, mi dere frende,
What þou were curteys & hende!
Who schal me now help i*n* fiȝt?
Neu*er* no was no better kniȝt. 1570
In ich fiȝt wele halp thou me,
Ful iuel ichaue y-ȝolden it þe;
For me þou hast þi liif forgon,
Of þe no tit me neu*er* help non.

Bot y am eskaped as ye may see.'
'My Nieueu hugon, where is he?' 1540
Quoth the Duke Otes, 'telle thou me.'
'In the playne he lieth sleyn *par*dee.'
'And the Erle Lambard, the good knyght?'
'Deed he lieth in that fighte.'

WHANNE the Duke Otes herde that, 1545 The Duke was very sorry.
Full sory he was for that myshap,
For his folke were so sleyne,
And thurgh Guy broughte fro lif to peyne.
For sorowe he waxe all-moste wode,
His herte to-berste well nyghe for mode. 1550

NOWE GUY maketh sorowe pitously, Guy lamented for his fellows,
And for his felawes wepeth gretly.
'Allas,' quoth Guy, 'felawes dere, 1555
So well doyng knyght*is* as ye were.

For thy loue, Felice, faire may, who died for Felice's sake.
Floure of knyght*is* is sleyn this day. 1560

But he was not the last, brought to harm through a woman.

Nowe all other may by me, 1565
Yf they woll, warned bee.
Allas, heraude, my dere frende,
That were so curteys and so hende,
Who shall me helpe now in fighte?
In the worlde nas a better knyghte. 1570
In eu*er*y place full well thou holpe me,
Euyl y haue it acquytte the;
For me thou hast thy lif forgoon,
Of the nomore helpe shall y haue noon.

How mai ich now fram þe wende? 1575
That y no mai dye þe hende!
Acursed be þe Lombardes ichon,
That slowen þe, and lete me gon!
& þat þai hadde y-slawe me,
& leten þe oliue be! 1580
Wharto lete þai me alon?'
Þus sir Gij biment his mone.

C. 1179. ¶ 'Allas! allas! Rohaut, mi lord,
Þat y no hadde leued þi word!
Þan hadde y nouȝt y-passed þe se, 1585
Ich hadde bileued at hom wiþ þe;
Þus yuel nere me nouȝt bifalle,
Y no hadde nouȝt lorn min felawes alle.
Who so nil nouȝt do bi his faders red,
Oft-siþes it falleþ him qued; 1590
For often ichaue herd it say,
& y[1] me self it sigge may,
"Who þat nil nouȝt leue his fader,
He schel leue his steffader."'
What for his wou*n*des þat strong bledeþ, 1595
What for his sorwe þat he ledeþ,

C. 1195. Al for sorwe & for wo
Adoun he fel aswon þo.
When he of swoning vp stod,
His feren he biheld wiþ drery mod; 1600
Þan he lepe opon his stede,
To an ermitage he wold ride.
'Ermite,' quod he, 'com wiþ me;
Þis hors of priis ȝiue y þe;
To bodis þou schalt i*n* erþe graue, 1605
Þat in þis forest ben y-slawe.'
'Bleþeliche, sir,' þan seyd he;
'Wende bifore, y folwe þe.'
Þe bodis him scheweþ sir Gij,
Boþe Toraud & sir Urry. 1610

[1] *y* illegible in MS.

Turnb. p. 55, l. 1397.

MS. 116r. col. 1.

A-cursed bee thise Lombardes echoone, [p. 50]
That slowe the, and lete me goone.'

He wished the Lombards had slain himself too.

He repented not having hearkened to Earl Rohaut

and his father.

What for his woundes that greuously bledeth, 1595
And what for sorowe that he fredeth,
Thus for sorowe and for woo
Adowne he felle in swounyng thoo.
Whan he of his swounyng was awaked,
Vp he stode, his sorowe not slaked. 1600
Than he worthe vpon his stede,
And to an hermytage he gan him spede.
'Heremyte,' quoth Guy, 'come with me,
And this hors of pris y yiue to the.
Twoo bodies thou shalt in erthe graue, 1605
That in this forest their dethes haue.'
'Blithely, sir,' seide than he;
'Wende forthe, y shall folowe the.'
Than the bodies him shewed Guy
Of Toraulde and[1] of good Vrry. 1610

He swooned away for woe.

Then he rode to a hermit's cell,

who promised to bury

Toraud and Urry.

[1] *and* added over the line.

Seþþe he lepe opon his stede,
Herhaud he wil wiþ hi*m* lede;
& so he dede sikerliche,
& seþþe he was heled softliche,
Ac no for þan Gij wend wele þere 1615
þat Herhaud to deþ y-wou*n*ded were.

C. 1215. ¶ Now is Gij þennes y-fare;
For his felawes he haþ gret care.
Turnb. p. 56, l. 1423. Herhaudes bodi wiþ hi*m* he bar,
For he nold it nouȝt lete þar. 1620
He went hi*m* to an abbay
þat was bisiden on the way.
Wiþ þe gode abbot þ*er* he mett,
& pitouseliche he him gret:
'Sir abbot, he þe haue & weld, 1625
þat made man wex i*n*-to eld!
& for þe loue of þe trinite,[1]
Ich þe bidde, par charite,
þat þou þis bodi vnder-fo,
& feir biry þou it do. 1630
Ful wele y schal ȝeld it þe,
& y mot haue hele, & liues be.'
'Who artow?' seyd þe abbot, 'telle it me.'
'Bleþeliche,' seyd Gij, 'bi mi leute:
C. 1237. A kniȝt icham of fer cuntre; 1635
At a pas asailed wer we
Wiþ strong þeues & mani outlawe,
þat mine feren haue y-slawe;
& ich me-self am iuel y-wounde,
Y wene y liue no[2] stounde; 1640
Ac ȝif y liue, y ȝeld it þe,
þe trauail þ*a*t tow dost for me.'
þabbot answerd þo:
'Al þi wille it schal be do.'
Turnb. p. 57, l. 1449. Now goþ Gij sore desmaid, 1645
His wo*un*des hi*m* han iuel afreyd.

[1] The first *i* in *trinite* added over the line.

[2] MS. originally *leue non*.

Sithe he toke another stede,
And Heraude with him he dooth lede, — Herhaud's body Guy would take with himself.
And rode him forthe ah softely:
For him he wepeth fuh hertly,
For he wende in sothe there 1615
That heraude to deth wounded were.

Nowe is Guy forthe fare,
And for his felawes maketh grete kare.
Heraudes body with him he dooth bere
Forto burye it eh*is*-where. 1620
He wente him to an Abbey — He came to an abbey,
That was ther beside the highe wey.
The Abbot Guy there he mette, [p. 51]
And fuh pitously he him grette:
'Sir Abbot,' he seide, 'god the blisse 1625 and begged the abbot
That man made for his owne, ywis:
Ah for loue of the Trynyte
I the beseche, for sainte Charite,
That thou this body here, loo,
In a faire buriel thou hit doo. 1630 to bury Herhaud decently.
Fuh weh y shah it yelde the,
And yf y any while lyuyng bee.'
'What art thou?' quoth the Abbot, 'telle me.'
'Blithely, sir': y sey the,
I am a knyght of farre Contree; 1635
At a passage assailled were we — On hearing his tale,
Of stronge theeff*is* and outelawes,
That my felawes haue broughte to deth*is* dawes;
And y meself haue many a wounde,
That y wene y shah lyue noo stounde; 1640
And if y lyue, y shah yelde it the,
The trauaille that thou doost for me.'
To Guy answerd the Abbot tho: — the abbot agreed.
'Ah thy wille, sir, shalbee doo.'
Nowe gooth Guy sore dismaide, 1645 Guy passed on in woe
His woundes haue him sore affraide.

To an ermite he is y-go,
Þat he was ere aqueynted to;
MS. 116r. col. 2. His woundes *þer* hele he dede
Wiþouten noise in that stede. 1650
[1] MS. *of toun.* Miche he him dradde þe douk Otoun,[1]
So ful he was of tresoun.
C. 1253. ¶ Þabot of whom ich er of teld,
On Herhaud he hadde gret rewþe to biheld;
He dede beren his body 1655
Into a chamber to vnarmy.
A monk of þe house biheld him,
Bodi & heued & ich a lim.
Þilke monk sorgien was,
Þe vertu he knewe of mani a gras; 1660
Þe wounde he biheld stedefastliche,
Þat in his body was so griseliche.
Bi the wounde he seye y-wis
Þat to þe deþ wou*n*ded he nis,
& seye þat he hym hele miȝt; 1665
& so he dede ful wele, y pliȝt.
Bi þe moneþ ende at eue
Gij was al hole & toke his leue
From þe gode ermite, he went his way
C. 1272. Toward Poile, also þe way lay. 1670
Turnb. p. 58, l. 1475. To þe king he is icome
Þat hi*m* bede mani warisone,
& miche tresour of siluer & of gold;
Ac Gij þerof non haue no wold.
At ich plas & turnament 1675
C. 1286. Gij hadde þe priis v*er*rament.
Was *þer* non i*n* al þat lond,
Þat his dent miȝt astond.
Þer-fore men loued hi*m* swiþe miche,
& vnder-fenge hi*m* bleþeliche; 1680
Alle gode men he was leue & dere,
& wiþ hem alle pleye-fere.

To an heremyte he is goo, — to a hermit,
That he was acqueynted wiṫ or thoo;
His woundes hele there he dedde — who healed his wounds.
Wiṫoute noyse in that stede; 1650
For moche he dredde the Duke Otoun),
Fuꝗ of hatrede and of[1] treasoun).

NOWE THE Abbot of wom y you telle, [p. 52]
Of heraude hath grete reuthe wiṫ-aꝗ; — As for Herhaud,
He lete bere his bodye 1655
In-to a Chambre to vnarme liǵtly;
And whan they had vnarmed him
A monke behelde eu*er*y lymme. — a monk saw that his wounds were not mortal,
The same monke a phisician) was,
The miǵte he knewe of many a gras. 1660
The woundes he behelde stedefastly,
That in the body were so grisely.
By the woundes he sawe ywis
That he to deṫ ne wounded is,
And that [he] him hele miǵt; 1665 — and succeeded in restoring him to life.
And so he dooṫ sothely apliǵt.
In the meane tyme, ye may me leue,
Guy was heled and toke his leue — Guy, now cured also, passed into Apulia,
Of the good heremyte and wente his wey
Toward Poyle riǵt as he may. 1670
To the king[1] of Poyle he was welcom̄e, — whose king welcomed him greatly.
And that he knewe fuꝗ sone.
Of siluer he bade him and of golde,
And Guy therof nouǵt take wolde.
At eu*er*y place in turnement 1675
Guy had the pris verament.
Was ther noon) in aꝗ the londe,
That Guyes dyntes miǵt withstonde.
Therfor' men loued him swithe,
And vnderfange him fuꝗ blithe; 1680
Wiṫ aꝗ good men) he was leef and dere,
And therwiṫ-aꝗ their' pleyfere.

Atte king he toke leue þo;
Into Sessoyne he is ygo.
¶ Now he is comen to þe douk Reyner, 1685
Þat him loued and held dere;
He him vnder-feng wiþ worþschipe,
& dede him miche manschipe.
So long *in* þat cuntre bileued he is,
Þat ou*er* alle oþ*er* he is praised y-wis. 1690
Gij him biþouȝt þo
Þat he hadde þ*er* y-nouȝ ydo:
MS. 116v. col. 1. Into Inglond he wald wende,
For to speke wiþ his frende;
For it was ago fif ȝer 1695
C. 1290. Þat he was last þer;
Turnb. p. 59, l. 1591. In lasse while þan þ*at* was
Might falle mani wonder cas.
Þurch cuntres has he hadde y-went,
Quens and cuntas hi*m* haþ of-sent, 1700
Ac non of hem he nold sikerliche
Bot Felice þat he loued so miche.
What for his miȝt and his godenisse,
For his nortour and his largesse,
Þer nis kniȝt þat so miche preysed be 1705
Unto Antiage, þat riche cite.
¶ Gij him spedde niȝt & day;
Into Inglond he toke þe way.
Of Gij ichil lete now,
And more after y schal tel ȝou; 1710
Of Herhaud ichil telle astounde
Þat wele is heled of his wounde.
When he feld him hole & fere,
Of þabot he tok his leue þer;
His lord Gij he goþ secheing 1715
Niȝt & day, him for to finde:
Toward Inglond he tok his way,
Crist hi*m* saue, so wele he may!

At the king' he toke his leeue thoo; [p. 53] — Thence he passed into Saxony,
In-to Cessoigne he is goo.
He is cõme to the Duke Reyner, 1685 — and was well received by Duke Reyner.
That him loued and had fuH deer';
And he him fange fuH worshipfully,
And did him honour' fuH manly.
So longe in the Contree ther' his duelling' is,
That ouere aH other he bereth̃ the pris. 1690
Guy him bethoughte thoo — Once more
That he had enough̃ ther' doo:
To Englonde he thoughte to wende, — he resolved to return to England.
For to speke with̃ his frende;
For it was agoo .v. yere 1695
That he was laste there;
In lasse stounde than that was
Befalleth̃ many a wonder cas.
Thurgh̃ the contrees as he hath̃ wente,
Quenes and Contasses for him hath̃ sente, 1700
And noon' he wolde sikirly
Bot Felice that he loued so hertly.
What for his mikeH goodnesse,
And for his might̃ and large prowesse,
Ther' nys knyght̃ that so moche preised bee 1705 — No knight was so praised as he.
Anone to Antioche, that good Citee.
Guy him spedde nyght̃e and daie,
Toward Englond he toke his weye.
Off Guy y shaH leue nowe,
And a liteH while telle yow 1710
Of heraude another stounde, — Herhaud also,
How he was heled of his wounde. — now healed of his wound,
Whanne he felte him-self hooH and quarte, [p. 54]
Of the Abbot he toke his leeue and did departe;
His lorde Guy he gooth̃ seching' 1715
Night̃e and daye for him bidding',
As Guy toward Englond toke his wey: — was making his way toward England.
Crist him saue that best may!

C. 1315. At a pinacle bi þe se
Gij seye a man of rewly ble 1720
Go in pilgrims wede :
þat was Herhaud, so god me spede !
Turnb. p. 60, l. 1527. Gij him cleped wel swiþe to him,
& seyd, 'wen comestow, pilgrim?'
'Sir,' he seyd, 'y com fram Lombardy, 1725
[1] *Of hardschipe?* Of hard y-schaped[1] for þe maistrie ;

& lorn ichaue mi kinde lord :
Gode kniȝt he was and bold. 1730
[2] MS. *of toun.* Bitraid ous hadde þe douk Otoun[2] :
Haue he Cristes malisoun !
In þis wise ichil go,
& bid for mi lord eu*er* mo.'
'Pilgrim, say me trewelich, 1735
What hete þe man þou loued so miche?'
'Gij of Warwike was his name :
C. 1336. A kniȝt he was wiþ-oute*n* blame.'
MS. 116v. col. 2. Wiþ þat he gan to sike sore,
& wepe wiþ his eyȝen þerfore ; 1740
He him miȝt no lenge at-held.
Gij hi*m* gan reweliche biheld :
'Gode man,' quod Gij, 'for þi leute,
What is þi name? telle thou me.'
'Herhaud of Ardern, bi mi leute, 1745
Ich was y-born in þat cuntre ;
Fif ȝer þus ichaue y-go
To seche Gij y loued so.'
C. 1343. When Gij herd Herhaud speke,
Hi*m* thouȝt his hert wald to-breke, 1750
Turnb. p. 61, l. 1553. & in his armes he haþ hi*m* take,
& gret ioie wiþ him gan make ;
Him he kist wel mani siþe :
For ioie he wepe, so was he bliþe.

At a pynacle of the see
He sawe a man sitte of ruly blee 1720
In a pou*er*e pilgrym̃es wede,
And that was heraude v*er*aily in-dede.
Anone Guy cleped to him,
And seide, 'of whens art thou, pilgrym̃?'
'Sir,' he seide, 'fro Lombardie.' 1725
'What tyding*is* there?' quoth̃ sir̃ Guye.
'By god,' quoth̃ heraude, 'y kan̄ nooñe;
For many a daie it is gooñe
That y loste my kynde lorde
That good knyght was, at a worde. 1730
Betraye vs did the Duke Otouñ:
Haue he crist*is* malison̄!
Therfor̃ in this wise y shall goo,
And bidde for my lorde eu*er*e moo.'
'Sey me, pilgrym̃,' quoth̃ Guy, 'truly, 1735
What height that mañ that thou loued so hertly?'
'Guy of Warrewik was his name:
A knyght he was withoute blame.'
With̃ that he gan̄ sighe sore:
He wepte and seide 'allas' eu*er*more; 1740
He might it noo lenger kepe in holde.
Guy full ruly he gan̄ him̃ beholde.
'Good man̄,' quoth̃ Guy, 'for thy leaute, [p. 55]
What is thy name? telle thou me.'
'Heraude of Ardern̄ meñ clepe me 1745
In contrees there as y haue bee.
.V. yere y haue thus goo
Seching̃ my lorde Guy that y loued so.'
Whan Guy herde heraude so speke,
Of his teres he gan̄ downe reke. 1750

Guy met him by the sea in pilgrim's weeds,

and learned that he came from Lombardy,

where he had lost his lord,

through the treachery of Duke Otoun.

His lord's name was Guy of Warwick,

and he himself Herhaud of Ardern.

Guy wept for joy.

'Hayl, Herhaud, maister min! 1755
No knowestow nouȝt norri þine?'
'Certes,' quod Herhaud, 'sir, nay:
Ded he was for mani a day.'
He him answerd, 'icham Gij!'
'Sir,' quod Herhaud, 'merci!' 1760
Sone so Herhaud vnder-stode
Þat it was Gij þat was so gode,
For ioie he fel aswon anon;
Gij him in his armes nome.
Þer men miȝt se ioie make 1765
Aiþ*er* kniȝt for oþer sake;
Þer nas non þat it y-seye,
Þat he no wepe wiþ his eyȝe.
C. 1357. ¶ Adoun þai sett hem boþe þare,
& aiþer teld of oþ*er*es care. 1770
Sir Gij haþ Herhaud y-teld
Hou he him ladde out of þe feld,
For to birry him at on abbay
Þat was bisiden on þe way.
[1] *n* on erasure. & seþþen[1] haþ Herhaud y-teld 1775
Hou his wou*n*des weren y-heled,
Turnb. p. 62, l. 1579. And þat mani lond he hadde ou*er*go,
To seche his lord wiþ sorwe & wo.
On hors þai lopen anon wiþ þis
Vnto a cite wiþ ioie and blis; 1780
Þan dede Gij Herhaud baþey
& wiþ riche metes comforti.
MS. 117r. col. 1. From þennes þai went to þe douk Milou*n*,
And to him þai ben ful welcome;
Of her auentours þai teld hi*m* þere: 1785
Hou þo was gode þat wicke was ere!
Þer þai maden her dueling
Long anouȝ to her likeing.
C. 1383. ¶ At the douke þai token leue þo,
For in-to Inglond þai wald go. 1790

'Allas, heraude, maister mynd! 1755 He told Herhaud that he was Guy.
Knowest not Guy, a felawe of thynd?'
'Certes,' quoth heraude, 'sir, nay:
Dede he was goond many a day.'
And he answerd, 'y am Guy.'
'A, sir,' quoth heraude, 'mercy.' 1760
As sone as heraude vnderstode
That he was Guy, the knyght goode,
In swowe he felle adowne anone, They fell in each other's arms and wept.
And Guy in his armes him toke full sone.

Adowne they sette theim bothe there, They sat down, and told each other all that had befallen them.
And tolde eche other of their kare. 1770
Sir Guy hath heraude telde
How he him bare oute of the felde,
For to burye him at an Abbey
That was there beside the highe wey.
And than heraude he him teelde 1775
How his woundes were heled,
And thurgh how many londes he had goo
Seching his lorde Guy with sorowe and woo.
THEIR HORS they toke after this,
And rode to the next Citee ywis; 1780
There did Guy Heraude in herbes bathy, [p. 56] Guy took Herhaud to Duke Miloun.
And with good metes him comforte hertly.
Fro thens they wente to the Duke Mylone,
To whomd they bothe were welcome.
Of their auentures they tolde there, 1785
And thanked good in many maner.
At the Duke they toke their leeue thoo, They now resolved to return to England.
Toward Englond they gand goo.

þe douke he*m* wald lenger duelle,
Ac it nas no-thing in her wille
þ*er* to bileue wiþ him no more,
& þat biþouȝt þe douke wel sore.
Toward Seynt Omer[1] he is y-go, 1795
Herhaud þe gode wiþ hi*m* also ;
Toward þe se þai token her way,
So swiþe her hors hem bere may.
When þai ben to toun y-come,
Her in þai han sone y-nome. 1800

[1] MS. *seyntomer.*

C. 1395. To a windowe sir Gij is go,
In-to þe strete he loked þo ;
A palmer he seȝe cominge,
Messaisliche bi þe strete walkinge.
To him haþ y-cleped sir Gij, 1805
& curteysliche gan him axi,
'Weltow herberwe? for it is niȝt ;
For ferþer go þou no miȝt.'
þe pilgrim answerd Gij,
'Swete sir, gramerci!' 1810
Gij doþ hi*m* þan bileue,
Ferþer he no may, for it was eue ;
& seþþe he badde he schuld hi*m* say
Su*m* soþ tidinges of þe way,
ȝif he herd neye oþ*er* fer 1815
Speken of batayle & of wer.
'Ichil þe telle,' he seyd, 'fot hot
Of al þe wer þat y wot :
þerof is mani man aferd ;
Of stronger sorwe no haue ȝe herd.' 1820
¶ Gij seyd to him, 'telle it me.'
'For soþe y grau*n*t,' þan seyd he.

Turnb. p. 63, l. 1605.

C. 1413. Of Almaine þe riche emp*er*our,
Reyner, þat weldeþ þat anour,
þe douke of Lowayn he[2] haþ bisett, 1825
His men slain, & þat is vnnett ;

[2] *he* dotted before *he.*

To seynt Omers is Guy come, 1795 Bu[illegible] St Omer,
And heraude with him all and some.
Towarde the see they take their wey, before putting to sea,
As swithe as the hors theim bere may.
Whan they to the Town were come,
Their Inne they take full sone. 1800
To a wyndowe is Guy goo,
Into the strete he behelde thoo;
A palmer he sawe comyng, Guy met a palmer,
Easely by the wey goyng.
To him than cleped Guy, 1805
And curteisly he gan him asky,
'Woll thou herburgh? for it is nyghte; invited him to lodge with him,
For fa[r]t[h]er thou ne goo myghte.'
The palmer answerd to Guy,
'Sir,' quoth he, 'gr*a*untmercy.' 1810
To sitte downe Guy gaue him leeue,
Farther he ne might, it was nyghe eeue.
Than he praide him he wolde him sey and asked the news of the way.
Some tiding*is*, yf he kouthe, of the Contrey,
Yf he herde nyghe or farre 1815
Speke of bataille or of werre.
'I shall telle,' quoth he, 'fote hote [p. 57]
Of grete werre that y wote:
Of a strenger y haue not herde;
Therof is many a man ferde.' 1820
Guy him seide, 'telle it me.'
'Forsothe y gr*a*unte,' seide he.
'Of Almaigne the Emperour, The palmer told how
Reyner, that is of grete honour, the Emperor of Germany
The Duke of Louaigne hath bee-sette, 1825 had besieged the Duke Segyn,
His Castell*is* destroied withoute lette;

MS. 117r. col. 2. For his nevou þat he slouȝ,
Wiþ wer he doþ *him* wo anouȝ.
Turnb. p. 64, l. 1631. Almost a ȝer it is ago,
A turnament þ*er* was y-do ; 1830
C. 1425. þe douke Segyn was þ*er* þo,
[1] MS. *alowayn.* þat al Lowayn[1] bilongeþ to,
[2] þ*e*? Wiþ his[2] kniȝtes of his lond,
þider come her miȝt to fond.
When þe turnament com to þende, 1835
þe douke Segyn þennes wald wende :
[3] on erasure. Wiþ þat come Sadok[3] prikeing,
þe douke Segyn vnder-secheing ;
Wiþ þe douke he hadde gret envie,
For he was gode kniȝt for þe maistrie. 1840
Sadok was y-hoten þat gome,
Out of Mirabel he was y-come ;
Of turnamens he was praised þo.
His hauberk was of y-do ;
In sengle armes he was y-diȝt. 1845
Y-preysed he was for a gode kniȝt.
To þe douke he seyd, 'wende tow þe ;
Ones þou schalt justi wiþ me,
As kniȝt that wele alosed is ;
Sone it worþ sen y-wis.' 1850
C. 1449. 'Sadok,' seyd Segyn, 'lete me be,
Wiþ gode loue y pray þe ;
Wiþ þe to justi haue y no wille,
For y þe loue, and þat is skille,
Turnb. p. 65, l. 1657. & to eken þat þou art mi lordes nevou : 1855
His soster sone so artow ;
Unworþschip it wer to me
ȝif y schuld iusti wiþ þe.
Ac go in, and arme þe snelle,
And y com anon, y nil nouȝt duelle.' 1860
Seyd Sadok, 'to arwe artow,
When ones justi no darstow now.

For his Neuyeu that he slowe,
He hath wroughte him moche woo nowe.
Alle-moste a yere it is goo,
At a turnement that is doo,
The Duke Segwyn was ther' thoo,
That alle louaigne belongeth vnto,
With alle the knyghtes of his londe
That thider come their' might to fonde.

because the latter had slain the Emperor's nephew at a tournament.

Sadok, jealous of Segyn, had,

though unarmed,

desired to joust with him.

Segyn declining the combat,

Now ichil þe for a couward held,
& for a kniȝt vnwrast in feld :
Bot þou wilt wiþ me justi, 1865
Ichil[1] þe don a vilani.
Hennes forward war þe fro me,
Þi dedliche fo ichil now be !'

[1] MS. Iichil.

C. 1465. Now Sadok smot to Segyn,
MS. 117v. col. 1. & nothing he no spared him ; 1870
Sadok toforn haþ him smete
Of his scheld a quarter wiþ gret hete,
Þat he him wounded þurch þat arm,
& he him wreþed for that harm ;
So strong is þat strok y-ȝiue, 1875
Þat his helme is al to-driue.
Þe douke him wreþþed for þat smite,
& was ful wroþ, ȝe mow wele wite,
& þurch þe bodi he Sadok smot,
Þat ded he fel doun fot hot. 1880
Turnb. p. 66, l. 1683. Wiþ þat he is out of the place y-went,
For þer was ȝiuen a sorwe-ful dent.
With him he dede þat bodi lede
Unto an abbay, and biri it dede.
Þe douke Segin anon riȝt 1885
Into the cite of Arrascoun him haþ y-diȝt :
Þer-in he holt him soiourninge
For drede of þemperours cominge.

C. 1497. ¶ & when þemperour herd þis cas,
Þat his nevou y-slawe was, 1890
Ouer al his lond his hest he bede
To com to him for grete nede.
& when þai al icomen beþ,
Þe douke of Lowayn he sege deþ ;
No wil he neuer þennes come, 1895
Er the douke be ded or nome.'

C. 1531. When þe pilgrim hadde al y-teld,
Gij him herkened & biheld ;

had been called a coward,

and at once attacked by Sadok.

In the fight that ensued

Sadok was slain.

And Segyn withdrew to his city Arrascoun.

Whan̄ the Em*per*our̄ herde that cas,
That his neuyeu so slayne was, 1890
Ouer̄ aꝗ his londe he bade his hooste
To com̄e to him for his socour̄ moste;
And whan̄ they aꝗ assembled were
The Duke of Louaigne he besegetꝗ̄ there:
He ne woꝗ thense goon̄e, 1895
Tiꝗ the Duke bee dede or noom̄e.'
WHANNE the pilgrym̄ had aꝗ telde,
Guy him herkened and weꝗ behelde.

The Emperor

had gathered a large army,

and now besieged the Duke.

He stont & biþouȝt hi*m* ȝerne,
Wheþ*er* he forþ go oþ*er* oȝain terne. 1900
He seyd to Herhaud, 'what rede [ȝe]?
Sum gode *con*seyl ȝif þou me,
ȝif we forþ in our wai go,
Oþer to þe douke hi*m* socour to do.
Þat tow me redest, don y wille; 1905
Þi *con*seyl forsake y nille.'

C. 1543. ¶ Þan seyd Herhaud i-wis,
Turnb. p. 67, l. 1709. 'Y ȝif *con*seyl, & gode it is;
Hem to help men schul spede
Þat to help han gret nede. 1910
For los and priis þou miȝt þ*er* winne,
& manschip to þe & al þi kinne.'
'Sir Herhaud,' quod Gij þe gode,
'Þilke lord þat died on rode
MS. 117v. col. 2. Þe blisse, & saue þe, 1915
For gode *con*seyl ȝif[es]tow me.'
Gij him graiþed & made hi*m* ȝare
[1] MS. *loreynie.* Into Loweyne[1] for to fare;
& wiþ hi*m* oþ*er* fifti kniȝt,
In feld þe best þat miȝt fiȝt. 1920
Y-comen þai ben to Arascoun,
To þe douke þai ben wel-com.
In þe cite þai han her in y-take;
Mani wer bliþe for her sake.

C. 1569. Gij bi þe morwe aros þo, 1925
Riȝt to chirche he is y-go:
Matins & masse he herd þere,
& seþþe went hom wiþ his fere.
Bi þe strete he seye miche folk erne,
Hemself to were þai most lerne. 1930
Sir Gij to his ost sede,
'What is al þis? so god þe rede,
Turnb. p. 68, l. 1735. Bele ost,[2] y bidde, say þou me,
[2] *ost* added over the line. What may al þis erning be?'

He bethoughte than full yerne, [p. 58] Guy
Yf he mighte goo forthe or ayene tourne. 1900
Than seide he to Heraude, 'what rede ye?
Good counsaille, sir, y pray the,
Yf we in oure wey forthe goo, naving asked
Or to the Duke wende and socour him doo.
What thou me redest y doo shall; 1905
Thy counsaille y woll not forsake at all.'
Than seide heraude y-wis,
'I yiue the counsaille that good is;
Him to helpe ye shall the better spede, the advice of Herhaud,
And also therfor haue grete mede: 1910
A good name and pris thou may ther wynne,
And worship to the and all thy kynne.'
'Sir heraude,' quoth Guy the good, determined
'That lorde that deide on the Rood
Blisse nowe and saue the, 1915
For good counsaille thou yiuest me.'
Guy him thanked and made him yare to help the Duke,
Streighte to Louaigne for to fare,
And with him other fifty knyghtes, with 50 other knights.
The beste that might bee in any fightes. 1920
Come they bee right to raumpsome, He repaired to Arascoun.
To the Duke they bee full welcome.
In the Citee they haue their Innes take;
Gladde were many for their sake.
Guy on the morowe aroosse thoo, 1925 The next morning,
Right to Chirche he is goo.
Masse and matyns he herde there
And after to his Inne did fare. after mass,

Guy to his hooste than seide, [p. 59]
'What is all this? thou me rede.
Bele hooste, sey thou me, learning that
What may all this doyng bee?'

'Sir, ichil þe telle,' þan seyd he, 1935
'No word nil ich lyȝe þe;
It is þemp*er*ours steward,
A gode kniȝt and no coward
(Anon to Speyne his better nis),
& with hi*m* gret *com*peynie y-wis, 1940
An hundred kniȝtes gode of ker,
Her better no may wepen ber.
Þe cite þai han bisett:
ȝif ani kniȝt be out y-mett,
He no mai nouȝt passe vn-y-nome, 1945
Oþer y-slayn atte frome.'
Þan seyd Gij, 'lordinges, kniȝt,
Oȝains he*m* we wil ous diȝt.'
Sone þai ben i*n* þe way y-don.
C. 1605. Þe steward seþ hem anon: 1950
Þider-ward he hi*m* diȝt,
Also a kniȝt[1] of gret miȝt.
His armes þan he ginneþ riȝt,
Oȝaines Gij he ritt apliȝt;
Anon to-gider þai gun smite, 1955
Aiþ*er* spard oþ*er* bot lite.
Gij þe steward so hard smot,
Of his stede he feld hi*m* fot hot;
Turnb. p. 69, l. 1761. MS. 118r. col. 1. Þan he smot him wiþ his swerd broun
A quarter of his helme adoun. 1960
Þurch grete strengþe he hi*m* wan,
& hom wiþ hi*m* ladde hi*m* þan.
C. 1631. When þe Almaines þat y-seye
Þat strong wer, and of fiȝt sleye,
Her lord nomen i*n* þat fiȝt, 1965
Owai þai priked wiþ al her miȝt.
MS. *ascheld.* Þer was þirled mani a scheld,[2]
Mani a kniȝt lay in þe feld;
Gij is oȝain went wel sone,
& al his feren mid-y-done. 1970

[1] MS. *akniȝt.*

'I shaꝗ the telle,' seide he, 1935
'And noo worde concele fro the;
This is the Emperou*r*s stywarde, the Emperor's Steward
That good knyghꝗt is and noo cowarde
(Fro hense to Ispaigne his better nys),
And with him grete companye ywis, 1940
An hondred of knyghꝗtes stronge,
That noon better wepon doo fonge.
Aꝗ this Citee they haue besette: was before the town,
It to destroye they woꝗ not lette,
Nor noo mañ eskape or nom̃e 1945
Or sleyne certaine fuꝗ son̄e.

THANNE seide Guy, 'Lording*is* and knyghꝗt*is*,
Ayenst theim lete we dresse vs.'
Anone they haue theim in wey doon. Guy sallied out,
The Styward sawe theim anoon: 1950
Thiderwardes he him dighꝗte,
As a knyghꝗte of grete mighꝗte.
His armes faste he gan arraye, fought with the Steward,
For formest Guy he thoughꝗt assaye.
To-geder anone they gan smyte, 1955
Eche spared other bot alyte.
Guy first to him smote,
That of his stede he felled him, god it wote,
And thanne he smote him witꝗ a swerde brown, [p. 60]
That a quarter of his helme he felled down. 1960
So thurghꝗ grete strengthꝗ ther he [is] nom̃e,
And by treuthe his plighꝗte mañ is becom̃e. and took him prisoner.
Whan the Almaignes that seye
That stronge were and in fighꝗte fuꝗ sleye,
That their lorde was take in that fighꝗte, 1965
And[1] prikke awey witꝗ aꝗ their mighꝗte. [1] *They!*
There was perced many a shelde,
Or they were past aꝗ the felde.
Than Guy ayene wente fuꝗ sone,
And his felawes witꝗ him echone. 1970

[1] *Almaines?*

Þe Lombardes[1] þai leggen fast opon,
Nil þai spare neuer on.
When þe kniȝtes of þat cite
Þis dede alle y-seyȝen he,
To army he[m] wel fast hy goþ, 1975
Gij wel gode socour hij doþ;
& seþþen þai went forþ ariȝt,
& Gij socourd ful wele apliȝt.
Swiche strokes men miȝt þ*er* se
Togider smiten þo kniȝtes fre: 1980
Boþe wiþ lau*n*ce and wiþ swerd
Thai ȝiuen mani strokes herd.
Þer miȝt men se stray þe steden,
So mani kniȝt cri & greden,
Turnb. p. 70, l. 1787. Þat wer þurch þe bodi wou*n*de, 1985
& ded fellen on þe grounde.
C 1657. ¶ Michel hi*m* peyned sir Gij,
& Herhaud of Ardern sikerly:
Þis Almayns þai han ou*er*come,
Sum y-slawe and su*m* y-nome. 1990
Þan sir Gij anon riȝt
Into þe cite he hi*m* diȝt,
Boþe he & his ferred:
Þe prisouns wiþ he*m* þai lede.
Into þe cite þai ben y-gon, 1995
& to her innes þai wente*n* ichon.
Proude þai ben alle & some
Þat þe Almains ben ou*er*-come,
When þe douke yherd þis tidinge,
For blis his hert bigan to springe, 2000
Þat Gii of Warwike was y-come
& hadde þe steward y-nome.
MS. 118r. col. 2. On his stede he lepe anon,
To Gyes in he is y-gon;
'Gij,' he seyd, 'þou art welcome, 2005
As of the warld þe best gome.

The knights of the city

rallied to Guy's assistance,

and an obstinate battle ensued.

The Almaignes they haue ou*er*e-coṁe,
Soṁe sleyne and soṁe noṁe. 1990

The Germans were vanquished.

There Guy and his felawes in that stede
Aꝗ their' p*ri*souners with theim lede.
To the Citee they wente anoon),
Eche to his Inne forth̄ is goon).
Proude they were aꝗ and soṁe
That the Almaignes been) ou*er*e-come.
Whan the Duke herde that tydinge,
For ioye his herte gan) to springe,
That Guy of Warrewik was coṁe,
And the Styward had so noṁe.
On a good stede he lepe anone,
And to Guyes Inne he is gooñe.
'Guy,' he seide, 'thou art welcoṁe,
As in the worlde of aꝗ *christ*en)[1] men)

Guy returned to the city with many prisoners.

The Duke was glad

of the news,

and welcomed Guy;

[1] MS. *xpen)*.

Toforn al o*þer* ichaue desired þe : 1905
God y-thanked mot he be
þat tow art come wiþ me to ben at nede,
For now ich worþ þe more loued & drede
Turnb. p. 71, l. 1813. Al of mi dedelich fo,
þat al þis lond haþ brouȝt *in* wo. 1910
Sire & lord now ichil make þe
Of mi court and of mi cite,
Mine castels & mine londes *þer*-to eke ;
& hennes forward y þe biseke
þatow þe worþschipe vnder-fo, 1915
& þine hest þerof þou do.
[1] originally *þi*, but crossed out and *mi* written over it in the same hand. Bi þi *con*seyl ichil nov don,
For to greue mi[1] dedli fon.'
C. 1700. ¶ Wel curteysliche answerd Gij
& seyd, 'sir, grame*r*ci. 1920
Bi mi miȝt ichil help þe
On ich stede where þat y be.'
þe steward he ȝelt him þan swiþe,
Of whom þat he was glad & bliþe ;
þurch hi*m* he wende acorded be 1925
Of þemp*er*our, his lord so fre.
Bitvene hem þai tolden tale
Of her gode frendes fale.
Now sent Gij his sondes about,
Ȝepe men wiþ-outen dout, 1930
To cuntres þat he haþ þurch-went.
Grete frendes he haþ of-sent,
Of barouns and of kniȝtes beld
þe best þat miȝt wepen weld,
Turnb. p. 72, l. 1839. Bi hundred and bi þousinde, 1935
þat al wil ben his helpinde.
þe castels and þe borwes þat lorn were,
þe douke oȝain wan hem þere
þurch Gyes help & his ferrede,
þat wele wer helpeand at nede, 1940

Ouer aꝗ other' y haue desired the : 1905
God thanked mote he bee
That thou art to me cõme, [p. 61]
For nowe y drede nooman).

Lorde and sire y make the 1911 to whom he gave power over all his dukedom.
Of my toure and of my Citee,
My castell*is* and my londe therto eke ;
And henseforeward y the beseke
That the lordship thou haue also, 1915
And aꝗ thy wille therwiꝗ doo ;
For by thy counsaille y woꝗ doon),
For to greue my dedely foon).'
Fuꝗ curteisly than answerd Guy
And seide, 'sir duke, g*ra*unt mercy. 1920 Guy thanked him,
Wiꝗ my miꝗte y shaꝗ helpe the
In eu*er*y stede where that y bee.'
Than the Styward he behelde swithe,
Of whom he was fuꝗ gladde and blithe ;
Thurꝗ him he hopeꝗ accorded bee 1925
Wiꝗ the Empero*ur*, his lorde free.
Betwene theim two they teld the tale :
Now yiue vs drinke wyne or ale.
Nowe sendeꝗ Guy his sonde aboute and induced
After good men) withoute doubte 1930
In-to Contrees that he haꝗ thurꝗ-wente.
Grete multitude he haꝗ for-sente,
Of knyꝗtes and barouñs bolde
The beste that wepon) in hande may holde. hundreds and thousands

The Castell*is* and the townes that loste were, 1937
The duke wanne ayene in that yere of others to aid him in recovering his rights.
Thurꝗ Guyes helpe in that stede
Wiꝗ his felawes that helped weꝗ at nede,

Bi hi*m* & bi his *con*seyl also,
þat þennes forward hi*m* trewe þe wil do.
¶ When þemp*er*our yherd þis,
þat Gij to þe douke ycomen is,
MS. 118v. col. 1. C. 1700. & þat he haþ his men ou*er*come, 1945
Y-slawe & his steward nome,
Wroþ & sori he is þ*er*-fore,
þat he haþ so his men forlore.
To his barouns þan he sede:
'Lordinges, what schal me to rede? 1950
Neu*er* no worþ ich glad no bliþe,
Bot ich be awreken swiþe
Of Segyn & Gij þat is our fo,
þat mi folk haþ brouȝt in wo.'
'Sir,' the douk Paui sede, 1955
'Ther-of þarf þe haue no drede.
Ar þe þridde day worþ to ende y-brouȝt,
þat play worþ wel dere abouȝt;
For of þine folk take we wille,
þat gode ben & snelle, 1960
Turnb. p. 73, l. 1865. þe best doand at swiche nede
Wiþ scheld & spere armed on stede:
Of Sessoine þe douke Reyner,
& þe *con*stable Gaudiner,
& ich wiþ hem wil be, 1965
& gret ferred lede wiþ me.
To Arascoun we schul fare,
ȝif we þe douk finde þare.
Bot we þe treytours þe ȝelde,
We wil þatow i*n* prisoun ous held. 1970
C. 1749. ¶ þemp*er*our answerd: 'y-wis,
A gode *con*seyl so is þis.
Sir douk Reyner, þou schalt go,
& þou, *con*stable, al-so;
Al-so schal þe douke of Pauie 1975
Wiþ his grete cheualrie

By him and his counsaille also [p. 62]
Fro thense foreward woƚƚ him trouthe doo.

WHANNE the Emperour herde this, The Emperour,
That Guy of Warrewik with the duke is,
And that he hatħ his men ouerecom̄e, 1945
His men) sleyn) and the Styward nom̄e,
Wrothe and sory he was therfore, wroth at his Steward's defeat,
That he his men) so hatħ lore.
To his baroñs than he seide : summons a council.
'How shaƚƚ we doo, and what is your' rede? 1950
I shaƚƚ neuere bee gladde nor blithe,
Bot it bee awreke righ̄t swithe
Of Segwyn) and of Guy also,
That my folke haue brough̄t in woo;'
And commaunded his dukes and baroñs aƚƚ 1955 By the advice of Duke Otoun,
To bee redy in armes at euery caƚƚ.

it was determined that Duke Reyner with an army should renew the siege.

To Arascoun, þat gode cite :
Þe douke & Gij bring to me.
Who so to me bring hem to,
Mi loue he schal haue for eu*er* mo.' 1980
'Sir,' þai seyd, 'we willen go
Al þine hest for to do.'
Now hij han her way y-nome,
To Arascoun þat ben y-come.
When þai of þe cite wist hem þare, 1985
Oȝaines hem þai diȝt hem ȝare ;
Hastiliche to armes þai ben y-go,
Kniȝtes and squiers wiþ hem also.
When þai wer al redi,[1]
& wele y-diȝt i*n* her parti, 1990
Þe douke cleped Herhaud him to,
& swetely seyd to hi*m* þo :
'Sir Herhaud, þou schalt afong
Four hundred kniȝtes wiȝt and strong
(Þou schalt ȝif þe first asaut 1995
Opon þe Almau*n*des, sir Herhaud) ;
& þou, sir Gij, an hundred to þe
Of mi londe þat best be ;
And ȝif þat Herhaud haue nede,
Him to help þatow spede, 2000
& ichil com wiþouten delay
Wiþ al þe strengþe þat y may.
Togider wiþ hem we schul fiȝt,
C. 1792. & hem ou*er*-com þurch godes miȝt.
As ichaue seyd, loke ye don, 2005
& goþ and asaileþ he*m* anon.'
Herhaud ginneþ he*m* to asaily.[2]
Þat fiȝt he wil comenci.
Of þe douk Ot*us* Herhaud is vnder-nome
In þe alder first scheltrome ; 2010
His fo he is euen forþ his miȝt,
For he it haþ deserued þurch riȝt.

Turnb. p. 74, l. 1891.

[leaf 118v. col. 2]

[1] MS. *alredi*

[2] MS. originally *asaile.*

'Sir,' quoth they, 'we woH goo 1981
AH thyn heste for to doo.'
So they haue their w[ey][1] nome,
And to Ransone they bee come.
Whan they of the Citee wiste them there, 1985
Ayenst theim they dressed in their gere:
Hastely to armes they bee goo,
Knyght*is* and squiers bothe twoo;
And whan they were aH redy
And well dighte on either party, 1990
The duke cleped heraude him to
And swetely to him seide tho:
'Sir heraude, thou shalt fonge
Foure hundred of knyghtis good and stronge
(Thou shalt yiue the first assaute [p. 63] 1995
Vpon the Almaignes, sir heraude);
And thou, sir Guy, an hundred to the
Of aH my londe the best that bee,
And if heraude haue nede,
Him to helpe fast thou spede; 2000
And y shaH come withoute delaie
With aH the strength that y maye:
To-geder with theim we woH fighte
And theim ou*er*e-come with godd*is* mighte.'
And as they seide so haue they doon, 2005
And doo theim assaille right anoon.
Heraude him gooth first to assaily,
That fighte for to meyntayny.
Of the duke Otes heraude is vndernome
In the vawarde, as it is aboute come. 2010

[1] two letters illegible.

They proceeded to Arascoun.

The besieged prepared

for a valiant defence

under Herhaud

and Guy.

Herhaud attacked

Duke Otous,

Turnb. p. 75, l. 1917.
C. 1804. Herhaud hi*m* seyd, 'Ot*us* of Pauie,
Understond tow of þat felonie
þat tow i*n* Lombardi ous dedest, 2015
When þou mi lord betreydest.
Wele we schul þer-of awreke be,
ȝif god wil, er þe sonne doun te.'
¶ Ot*us* answerd, 'þou lexst on me,
& þat y schal sone kiþe þe; 2020
Gret scorn is here so y go,
Y warn þe icham þi fo.'
C. 1811. Togider þai smiten wiþ gode wille,
þat boþe of her hors adoun felle;
& after þai drouȝ her swerdes newe, 2025
Wiþ gret envie to-gider þai hewe.
þe douk him wereþ miȝtliche,
Herhaud him asaileþ strongliche;
þurch þe feld he goþ hi*m* driueinde.
Wiþ þat com his folk prikeinde, 2030
& her lord rescuweþ þere;
C. 1824. Herhaud to nim angwisous þai were.
[leaf 118r. a] Herha . . . . . .
Wiþ þ . . . . . .
Wiþ [s][1] 2035
Herh . . . . . .
þan . . . . . .
Non . . . . . .
Turnb. p. 76, l. 1943. Miche . . . . . .
To þe 2040
Mo þ . . . . . .
þat d . . . . . .
þe do . . . . . .
He seye . . . . . .
He seyd 2045
C. 1835. Lordin . . . . . .
No se ȝ . . . . . .
þat d[o] . . . . . .

[1] The letters in brackets only partially left.

Heraude to him seide: 'thou Otes of Pauye,
Vnderstondest not of that felonye
That thou in lombardie didest, 2015 reproached him with his treachery,
Whan thou my lorde and me betraidest?
A-wreke we shuH therof now bee,
Yf god woH, or the sonñe couere hir blee.'
Otes answerd: 'thou liest on me,
And that y shaH preoue on the.' 2020

To-geder they smyte with good wille,
That bothe of their hors they felle.
Than they drawe their swerdes kene, 2025 and would have slain him
And hewe to-geder sharply, y wene.
The duke him temptetH mightly,
And heraude him assailleth strongely:
Thurgh the feelde he gooth him dryuyng. [p. 64]
With that cometh his folke priking, 2030
That their lorde reskewe there, but for the succour of his men.
And heraude to take they angry were:
Bot heraude vpoñ him werred strongly.
With that cõmeth his folke hastely:
With strength they bee forthe goo, 2035
And heraude they broughte on hors thoo.
Than gan they to-geder smyte:
Nooñ spared other bot a lite.

The duke Otes had sorowe gretly,
Whan he sawe his folke sleyn so greuously,
And seide to his felawes thoo: 2045
'Lordinges, what shaH we nowe doo? Otous called upon his men
See ye not here a man, by name,
That me dooth harme and moche shame,

Þat ha . . . . . .
ȝour f 2050
Bot ȝe of [h] . . . . .
Mi loue n . . . . . .
Wiþ þat [þ] . . . . . .
& to Herha . . . . . .
Þer is Her 2055
When he h[a] . . . . .
Ac recou*er* . . . . . .
For gret [s] . . . . . .
Herhaud [þ] . . . . .
Ac he him 2060

C. 1851. When Gij [s] . . . .
& out of . . . .
His helme . . . . . .
& his scheld . . . . .
Turnb. p. 77, l. 1969. & his hors 2065
In strong . . . . . .
Wiþ loude . . . . . .
To þe douk[e] . . . . .
He rescuw[e] . . . . .
Þe oþ*er* þai 2070

C. 1861. Ac when [s ?] . . . . .
Arnend he . . . . . .
Wiþ loude [v ?] . . . . .
To þe douk [o] . . . . .
Þou fals wr 2075
Wel litel þou þ(?) . . . .

leaf 118^{r} *b and* 118^{v} *a torn off.*

That hath nyghe sleyne alle my men,
Youre frendes and your kynnesmen?
Bot ye on him some wreke doo,
I shalle you neuere loue moo.'
With that they assembled echoon,
And to heraude they smyte anoon.
There is heraude mysse bee-falle:
Loste he hath his men alle,
And recouere he shalle sone this;
For grete socour him cometh ywis.
Heraude they dryue strongely,
And he werred on him hardily.
Whan Guy sawe heraude comyng,
Oute of that stronge fighte fleyng,
His helme to-dasshed in stedes moo, [p. 65]
His sheelde to-hewen alle-moste in twoo
(And his hors wounded sawe he:
In stronge fighte he had bee):
With loude steuene than he yede
To the Duke and made assaute fulle quede.
He rescowed heraude in the felde,
And the other they toke and helde.
Whan Otes sawe sir Guyon
Come rennyng to him as a lyoun,
With highe voice he gan vpbreide,
And to the Duke Otes thus he seide:
'Thou false and disceyuable traitour,
Fulle litelle thou thoughte on thyn honour,
Whanne thow bee-traidest me,
And dud my men with sorowe slee
In the forest of playnes, as y forthe come
With my felawes, good knyghtes echoone.
Fro hense forewarde, y telle the,
Thy dedely foo y shalbee.
In good poynte to bee y am not like,
Tille[1] y haue thyn hede of strike.'

2050 for revenge.
2055 Herhaud was hard pressed,
2060
2065 but Guy came to his aid.
2070 Guy called Otous
2075 a traitor,
2080 and threatened to strike off his head.

[1] *Thille* MS.

C. 1909.

C. 1917.

With that eithe^r^ of theim pricked his stede, 2085
And in grete wrathe to-gider yede.
Otes smote Guy in the sheelde,
That euen half flowe in the felde,
And Guy gaue Otes a wounde:
Thurgh his theighe he thruste his swerde grounde, 2090
And his hede he had him benome,
Had not grete socour to him the rather come.
Two hundred knyghtes assailled Guy, [p. 66]
And him wolde haue sleyn wilfully,
And he him defended as a man: 2095
Ah that he smote woo theim beecam.
There they haue their lorde redde,
And ah wounded oute of the place ledde.
Guy the Almaignes before him wreketh:
Many he taketh, and many he sleeth. 2100
Guy theim driueth, and fast they flee,
As folke that greuously ou*er*come bee.

Guy fell upon Otous.

But Otous although wounded, was rescued by his men.

WITH THAT come the Duke Reyner,
And the Constable sir Gaudemer:
In a slade they metten Guy, 2105
And strongly on him sette they;
And Guy him drowe toward the Roume,
And ah his felawes that with him come;
For ther were a thousand knyghtes
With theim to mete anone Rightes. 2110
'Lordinges,' quoth Guy, 'herken to me:
Thise knyght*is* bee comyng as ye may see,
The Duke Reyner of Cessoigne
And the Duke Gaudemer of Coloigne.
In eu*er*y side we bee-sette bee, 2115
So that we may not hense flee;
And though we might y nelle;
For forsothe, y shah you telle,
Better it is to dye manly
Than to flee with shame and vilanye.' 2120

Guy was attacked by Duke Reyner and Constable Gaudiner,

who came with a thousand knights.

It is better to die like a man than to flee shamefully.

C. 1937.

C. 1975.

C. 1989.

AH they answerd in that stede, [p. 67]
'With the we woH abide v*er*aily in dede.'
To-gider they smyte than faste:
Of the Almaignes they were not agaste.
There they beganne aH newe fighte, 2125
Wher-thurgh deide many a good knighte.
Guy gooth to smyte Duke Reyner,
And of his stede he felled him ther'.
Heraude smote to Gaudemer' there,
And oute of his sadeH he did him bere. 2130
With that cometh forth Gilmyn):
Besibbe he was the Duke Segwyn).
Than duke Botolf he smote so,
That of his hors he felled him tho.
Whan that sawe Duke Reyner 2135
And the Constable Gaudemer,
Before theim their folke sleyne,
With grete sorowe and with peyne
Their' voices lowde they greyde,
And assembled ayene with their' ayde. 2140
With that come the Duke Reyner,
And Gilemyn he mette ther',
So that the swerde longe and brode
Thurgh-oute his hepe it glode.
Gilemyn) with-drowe abacke fleyng',
Ayene-warde faste priking',
And is to Duke Segwyn) come:
WeH he him knewe right sone.
'Sir Duke,' quoth Gilemyn),
Thou abidest to longe, by seynt Martyn). 2150
Socour' thy folke, and that blyue: [p. 68]
The Almaignes begynne fast on vs dryue.'
Whan the Duke of Gilemyn) this herde,
And of his folke how it ferde,
He smote his stede and gan) to goon), 2155
To his men) he seide anoon):

Guy threw Reyner off his horse,

as Herhaud did Gaudiner,

and Gilmyn did Botolf.

But the Germans rallied.

Gilmyn was wounded,

and rode away to Duke Segyn.

C. 1999. [*the first* 11 *lines of leaf* 118ᵛ *b. entirely gone*]

[leaf 118v. b.]

. . . . . [o]n
. 2165
. . . . . falle
. . . . . .
. . . . . stiel
. . . . . [h]ond
. . . . . d 2170
C. 2023. . . . . . [R]eyner
. . . . . er
. . . . . es fere
. . . . . .
. . . . . ori 2175
. . . . . .
. . . . . n
. . . . . broun
. . . . . on
. . . . . non 2180

. . . . . tede 2187
. . . . . .
. . . . . me
. . . . . [o]me
C. 2043.

Baroñs, knyght*is*, strengthe you
Guy wele to socour' now;
For and Guy bee dede or nome,
AH we bee thanne ouercome.' 2160
With that come the Duke dryuyng',
And the Almaignes fast assailling'.
The Duke a knyghte smote anone,
That dede he did him to grounde goon).
Guy they socour' weH with aH: 2165
Many a good knyght he did dede down) faH.
On either side they foughte wele
With their launces and swerdes of stele:
They smote of hedes, armes, and honde;
AH to-hewen) they lye in the sonde. 2170
With that cometh Duke Reyner',
Sleyne he hath the good Gayer:
In fraunce he was borne, Guyes feere;
To Guy he was leef and dere.
Whan Guy that sawe he was sory: 2175
To the Duke he smote greuously,
That of his stede he felled him downe;
And than he drowe his swerde browne.
Suche a stroke he smote him vpon)
That dey he wende forth-with anoon). 2180
Sone there beganne a straunge shoure: [p. 69]
To-geder they smyte knyght*is* of valoure.
So many strokes yiuen thou might see
Of the knight*is* that smote so free:
Bothe with spere and with swerde 2185
They yiue many strokes and harde.
Ther' men) might see straye many a stede,
And many a knyght shriche and grede.
Wherto shuld y make a tale of nought?
The Almaignes were to deth brought. 2190

Duke Segyn attacked the Germans.

Either side fought well.

Gayer was killed by Reyner.

At last

the Germans were vanquished.

NOWE BEEN the Almaignes ou*er*-come,
To dethe wounded, and greuously nome.

. . . . . [f]leinge
. . . . . [d]riueinge
C. 2047. . . . . . ode gome 2195
. . . . . e

. . . . . fro
. . . . . to do 2200
. . . . . t
. . . . . d sket
. . . . . oȝe
. . . . . [þ] me
. 2205
. . . . omen ichon

C. 2059. Or ichil telle þemp*er*our
Turnb. l. 1985. MS. 119r. a. ȝe han y-don hi*m* gret deshonour,
When ȝe for a fewe men
Schul so sone oway flen.' 2210
Þai turned hem anon riȝt,
& bi-gun a newe fiȝt.
Al togider þai gun smite;
[1] *Slemblant* MS. Semblant[1] of loue þai kidde bot lite.
Heteliche to him smot Gyoun; 2215
His scheld nas nouȝt worþ a botoun,
Turnb. p. 78, l. 1995. No his tvifold armes halp hi*m* nouȝt
Þat in Loreyn weren y-wrouȝt.
Strokes hij togider delden ywis
On helmes & on briȝt scheldes; 2220
So hard þai striken he*m* bitvene,
Þat gode stones fallen þ*er* ben.
Aiþ*er* semed a lyoun of mode,
So hard þai smiten wiþ swordes gode.
Wiþ hi*m* smot þe d[illegible] Segyn, 2225
No lenge miȝt he wiþhelden him;
Togider þai smiten hard and wel
Wiþ brondes wele wrouȝt of stiel.

Toward their' hooste they goo fleyng',
The Duke and Guy after theim dryuyng'.
Witħ that com̄e priking' Terry fuł sone, 2195 Then came Tirri with thirty knights.
Of Gornoyse Aubries owne son̄e,
Of[1] thirty Knygħt*is* swithe and snelle [1] *With?*
Of his owne meyne hardy and felle:
Ał they com̄e armed the hooste fro,
The Almaignes socour for to doo. 2200
There they haue theim mette:
Witħ loude steuene withoute lette,
'Lording*is*,' he seide, 'how goo ye? At the call of Sir Tirri
Ayene wende nowe witħ me
To assaille eftsones your foon),
Of whom ye bee ou*er*ecom̄e echoon),
Or y woł telle the Emperour'
That ye haue him doo grete dishonour',
Whan ye for a few men̄ [p. 70]
Shuł so swithe awey fleen).' 2210 the flying Germans turned again.
Ayene they to*ur*ned anone righte,
And begonne there a grete fighte.
Terry beganne a knygħte to smyte, Guy engaged them,
Semblant of loue he made a luyte.
Hertely to him smote Gyoun);
His shelde auailled him not a botoun).

Harde strokes they to-geder deelde
On helmes and on stronge sheelde;
So harde they striken) theim betwene,
That goolde and stones falle ther' been).

assisted by Duke Segyn.

Thanne com̄e the Duke Segwyn),
Longe ne migħt he withholde him;
To-gider they smyte harde and wele
Witħ swerdes weł wrougħt of stele.

Wiþ þat come prikeand Tirri,
Of Gurmoise þerl sone Aubri ; 2230
Wel sternliche he smitt a kniȝt,
þat ded he fel anon riȝt.
C. 2091. So sone so douke Segyn seþ þis,
Wel wroþ he was wiþ him y-wis ;
Wroþlich he seyd to Gij, 2235
'Here is gret scorn sikerly,
When þat olepi kniȝt
Schal ous do so michel vnriȝt,
& þan wiþ his saut owai flen.'
Gij answerd, 'turn we oȝen, 2240
& hardiliche aseyl we hem :
Anon turn we oȝen.'
C. 2101. þe Almau*n*s þai go to asayl
Turnb. p. 79, l. 2021. Wiþ gret strengþe in batayl ;
Sorweful of he*m* was þe meteinge 2245
Wiþ brondes of stiel wele kerueinge.
Anon þe Almau*n*des gin flen,
& þe oþ*er* turnen oȝen.
þe douk Segyn oȝain come,
Riȝt to his cite þe way he nome, 2250

MS. 119r. b. & Gij afterward wiþ hi*m* is go, 2255
& eke his feren also.
Wiþ hem þai habben her p*ri*sou*n*s,
Doukes, erls, & barouns ;
Wel glad & bliþe þan ben he,
& al þat weren i*n* þat cite. 2260
To her innes þai ben y-gon,
Wel glad ben hij eu*er*ichon.
C. 2137. þe douke goþ in-to þe tour :
His prisouns he doþ gret anour,

Than he to*ur*ned his stede Tirry,
As a good knyght, and a mighti, 2230
And bakward smote to a knyghte,
That dede he falled him anoñe right.
Whan the Duke Segwyñ sawe this,
Fuꝗ wrothe he was ywis,
And aꝗ wrothely seide to Guy, 2235
'This is grete scorne sikirly,
Whan aꝗ him self oon) knyghte
Shaꝗ vs doo this grete vnrighte.'
Guy answerd, 'to*ur*ne ayene,
And hardily assaiꝗe theim; 2240
For better it is manly dede bee
Thañ wiꝗ shame awey to flee.'
The Almaignes they goo to assailly, [p. 71]
And wiꝗ grete strengꝗ ou*er*ecoṁe bee they.
Tirry to theim was eu*er*e meuyng', 2245
And with his swerde gretly harmyng'.
Now goo the Almaignes fast fleyng',
And in their' fistes their' swerdes bering'.
The Duke Segwyn) ayene coṁe,
And lete theim passe their' wey hoṁe. 2250
THANNE the Almaignes were thus wente
Discomfited in the feelde and shente,
The Duke Segwyñ than wente, as ye may see,
The right wey to the Citee;
And Guy of Warrewik wiꝗ him is goo, 2255
And aꝗ their felawes wiꝗ theim also.
Wiꝗ theim they lede their' prisounes,[1]
Dukes, Erles, and also Barounes.
Fuꝗ glad and blithe aꝗ they bee,
And aꝗ that were in the Citee. 2260
To their' Innes they bee goon)
Fuꝗ gladde and ioyefuꝗ eu*er*ychoon).
The Duke him wente to his toure:
His p*r*isoun*er*s he lokked wiꝗ grete honoure

Tirri slew a knight.

Segyn was wroth at Tirri's prowess.

But his men soon rallied,

defeated the Germans,

and returned triumphant to the town.

Segyn treated his prisoners very well,

[1] *prisouners* MS.

Þerl Reyner of Sessoyne, 2265
& þerl Gaudiner of Coloyne,
& wiþ hem þe stewerd,
Þat gode kniȝt was & wel y-herd.
Wiþ him eten he he*m* dede,
& more þan himself he*m* worþschipede. 2270
Þe douke his soster cleped hi*m* to,
Þe fairest maiden þat miȝt go.
Turnb. p. 80, l. 2047. 'Þe prisouns þou nim to þe,
In þi chamber wiþ þe to be;
[1] the *u* has a stroke too much. In þi chau*m*ber[1] kepes me 2275
Þis gentil kniȝtes hende & fre;
& ou*er* alle oþ*er* þe douke Reyner:
In hert he is me lef & dere.'
'Sir,' sche seyd, 'ichil so
Hem to kepe my miȝt y-do.' 2280
C. 2153. ¶ Ac þe riche emp*er*our fre,
Of þis comberment nist he.
Wiþ a kniȝt he pleyd atte ches
Of Hungri, þat he loved y-wis.
Wiþ þat com Tirri prikeinge, 2285
In his fest his brond bereinge:
His hauberk was al to-tore,
& his nasel avaled bifore.
Þurch his bodi þe blod ran;
Tirri made no semblau*n*t of þan; 2290
[2] MS. *alto hewen.* His strong scheld al to-hewen[2] was,
[3] MS. *of þer.* Nouȝt a fot hole þer-of[3] nas.
C. 2165. ¶ 'Emperour,' he seyd, 'vnder-stond to me:
Hard tidinges may y telle þe
Of þine barouns þat y-nome be; 2295
No schal þai neu*er* com to þe.
Sum be ded & brouȝt to grounde,
& su*m* be nomen, & su*m* be wounde:
MS. 119v. a. Turnb. p. 81, l. 2073. Y-nomen is þe douk Reyner,
& þe *con*stable Gaudiner; 2300

Than),[1] Duke Reyner of Cessoigne, 2265 [1] *The?*
And the Erle Waldemer of Coloigne,
And with theim Conrad the Stywarde,
That good knyght was and not a-ferde.
With him to ete he theim dude,
And gretly theim he than worshipped. 2270
The Duke his Suster cleped him to, and committed them to the care of his sister.
The fairest maide that on erthe might goo.
'Thise prisouners thou take to the, [p. 72]
And in thy Chambre thou kepe theim me,

And ouer all other the Duke Reyner, 2277
That to me is leef and deer.'
'Sir,' she seide, 'y shall so
To kepe theim my might doo.' 2280
And the Emperour Reyner free The emperor was
Of this combraunce ne wiste he.
With a King he pleide at ches playing at chess
Of Hungrye, that he loued y-wis.
With that come Terry priking, 2285 when Sir Tirri, in a sorry plight,
And in his honde his swerde bering:
His harneis was all to-tore,
And his vomrell aualed before;
Thurgh his body the blode ranne,
And Terry made noo semblant thanne: 2290
His stronge shelde all to-hewen was,
That skantly any hole pees nas.
'Emperour,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me: brought the bad tidings of the rout of his men,
Harde tydingis y telle the
Of thy Barons that taken bee; 2295
Ne shall they neuere come more at the.
Some bee dede and leyde to grounde,
And some smitten with dethes wounde.
Take is the duke Reyner,
And of Coloigne the Erle Waldemer; 2300

Þe douke of Pauie wou*n*ded is
Wiþ a swerd þurch þe bodi y-wis:
Of þe deþ he drat him sore,
Hele no worþ him neu*er* more.'

C. 2177. When þemp*er*our herd þo 2305
What þerl Tirri seyd him to,
Wel sori he was, & wroþ þer-fore,
Þat neyȝe he haþ his witt forlore.
Y-sworn he haþ a wel gret oþ
Bi god almiȝti al for-soþ, 2310
Þat neu*er* bliþe no worþ he,
Al what þat cite y-nomen be,
& þat þe [1] traitours ben y-slawe,
Oþ*er* for-brent, oþ*er* y-flawe.

[1] not quite distinct.

C. 2187. ¶ His [2] heste he dede cri anon, 2315
His men to arme hem eu*er*ichon;
His scheltromes anon he diȝt,
& redi þai ben al to fiȝt.
Þe feldes þai ben sone ou*er*-gon
Þat were þe tounes bisiden on, 2320
Al what hij comen to þe cite.
Gaier [3] þan forþ ȝede he
Wiþ fif hundred armed kniȝtes,
Hardi & wele doand i*n* fiȝtes.
Þo þat weren i*n* þe cite, 2325
On þe Almaynes bihelden he,
& seye þe cuntres & al þe feldes,
C. 2200. Wiþ white hauberkes & wiþ scheldes.
Þe douke hi*m* com forþ wiþ þat,
Wele y-armed on stede he sat: 2330
'Gij,' he seyd, 'what schal we do?
Ȝif we go & smite hem to,
Or we gon our walles to were,
Þat þe Almayns ous nouȝt dere?'
Þan spac Sir Gij fot hot, 2335
'Wele schaltow do, for-soþe y wot:

[2] *ost* underdotted.

[3] *Gaier* on an erasure.

Turnb. p. 82, l. 2099.

The Duke of pauye wounded is
Wiţh a swerde thurgh the body ywis:
Of deţh he dredde him sore,
To eskape he weneţh nomore.'

the captivity of Duke Reyner and Gaudiner, and wounding of Otoun.

WHANNE the Emperour herde tho [p. 73] 2305
What the Erle Tirry tolde him to,
FuH sory he is, and wrothe therfore:
AH-moste he haţh his witte forlore.
Swore he haţh a fuH grete othe:
By god aH-mighti and forsothe, 2310
Neuer glad shal bee he,
For that Citee take bee,
And tiH the traitours bee slawe,
In fire brende, or aH quykke drawe.
His trompettis he bade blowe anoñe, 2315
And his hooste to harneys echooñe.

The Emperor

swore that he would never be blithe again till he had taken the city,

and slain the traitors therein.

His whole host

The feldes sone they haue thurgh-goon):
Downes ne valeis they spared noon), 2320
TiH they coṁe before the Citee.
Gonrande than forthe yede he
Wiţh .v. hundred of orped knyghtes,
That hardy were and weH doyng in fighţes.
AH that thoo were in the Citee, 2325
Vpon) the Almaignes gan) beholde and see:
They sawe the Contrees couered and the felde
Wiţh white hauberkes, speres, and shelde.
The duke him coṁe forth wiţh that,
WeH armed vpon) a good stede he sat: 2330
'Guy,' he seide, 'what shaH we doo?
Yf we goo to smyte theim too?'

marched to the city,

the van led by his son Gaier with 500 knights.

'Sir),' seide Guy foot hote, 2335
'FuH weH thou shalt doo, y it wote.

Guy advised Segyn to sally out with 100 knights;

Nim we now an hundred kniȝtes,
& go asayl hem anon riȝtes.
Bifor þe cite y se stond here
Gaier, þemper*our* sone Reyner, 2340
& fif hundred[1] kniȝtes in her ferred,
Wele y-armed on heye stede.
Biforn her ost þei ben y-comen,
Angwisous ous to nimen;
& ȝif we habbeþ gret nede, 2345
C. 2218. Oȝain-ward we mai ous spede.'
Anon þai nomen an hundred kniȝtes,
Hardi & of most miȝtes;
þai wenten out of þat cite,
Wel modi men weren he. 2350
Wiþ þe Almau*n*s þai wil iusti,
Nil hii nouȝt wiþ he*m* acordi;
Togider þai smiten hard & swiþe,
Of hors þai fellen mani a siþe.
¶ Sir Gij hi*m* smot to Gaier, 2355
& feld hi*m* doun of his destrer,
& seþþen he wan hi*m* i*n* þat fiȝt;
þe oþ*er* oway flowen[2] anon riȝt.
Toward þe ost þai flowen snelle,
þe hete was swiþe strong wiþ alle. 2360
Mani þai nomen & bounden fast,
& ladde into þe cite on hast.
C. 2235. When þai of þe ost y-seye þis,
þat her folk ou*er*comen is,
& þat was in þat fiȝt y-nome 2365
Gaier, þat was þemper*our* sone,
þan[3] hastiliche þe ost ichon
Opon Segyn þat smiten anon.
þer bigan a newe fiȝt,
Whar-þurch died mani a kniȝt. 2370
On aiþer side mani on dyed y-wis;
Ac þe douke wers bifallen is,

[1] originally *hundered*, but the first *e* under-dotted. MS. 119v. b.

Turnb. p. 83, l. 2125.

[2] originally *blowen*.

[3] *an* not quite distinct.

Woꝗ we take a thousand knyghtes, — which was done.
And goo theim assaile anone rightes.
Before the Citee y see stonde here [p. 74]
Gaier, the Emperours sone Reyner,
And .v. hundred knyghtis at his lede,
Fuꝗ weꝗ armed vpon their stede.
Before their hoost they bee come:
Lete vs theim assaille now fuꝗ sone.
Yf we of socour haue any nede,
Ayenewarde we mowe vs sone spede.'

Than oute of the Citee bee they goon
Fuꝗ swithe hasty right anoon,
The Almaignes for to assaille:
Therof they thinke not to faille.
To-geder they smyte harde and swithe,
Of hors they felle many a sithe.
Guy dooth smyte to Gaier, — Gaier was taken prisoner,
And felled him downe right ther,
And so toke him ther in that fighte: — and his men put to flight.
The other flowen anone righte.
Toward the hoost they flee, y you telle,
The other after, theim to quelle.

Whan they of the hooste sawe this, — The German main army
That their folke so ou*ere*-come is,
And that ther was in that fighte nome
Gaier, the Emperours sone,
Than hasted they of the hoost echoon,
Vpon Segwyn they smyte anoon: — attacked Segyn,
Begonne they haue a fuꝗ stronge fighte,
Wher-thurgh deide many a knyghte. — and slew many of his men.

For miche of his folk he les.
Al au*n*treousliche þ*er* he come*n* wes.
Þurch pride þan ferd he 2375
Fram his ost, and fram his cite.
Turnb. p. 84, l. 2151. Wele hii deden no þe les,
He and Gii þat mi3ti wes,
[1] originally 3*erne*, but the second *n* underdotted. & wiþ hem Herhaud of Arderne;
To hem þai smite*n* swiþe 3erne.[1] 2380
C. 2253. ¶ Wiþ þat com prikeing Tirri,
Þat gode kni3t was & hardi;
To þe douk Segyn he smot,
& of his hors feld him fot hot;
Ac þe douk anon vp stert, 2385
As he þat was agremed in hert,
MS. 120r. a. & out he drou3 his swerd of stiel,
& defended him swiþe wel.
Whom þat he rau3t, ded he fel;
Strong kni3t he was, hardi & snel. 2390
Þer he defended him asp*er*liche;
Þe Almaunis hi*m* asayl hastiliche:
Y-loken he was hem amidwerd,
To him þai launced boþe spere and swerd.
In mani stede wounded is he; 2395
C. 2268. Wele he werþe hi*m* þei he sailed be.
When Gij seye þe douke of fot,
For sorwe no wist he no bot;
Wel hardiliche he smot a kni3t,
Þat ded he feld hi*m* anon ri3t. 2400
His swerd of stiel he haþ up pli3t,
& smot so anoþ*er* kni3t
Turnb. p. 85, l. 2177. Þat asailed þe douke Segin,
Þat heued sone binam him,
& seþþe he sett him his stede opon, 2405
& fast hii asailed her fon;

Segyn, Guy, and Herhaud wrought wonders.

With that cõme priking Tirry, 2381
That good knyght was and hardy:
To the duke Segwyn he smote, [p. 75]
That langestreighte he felled him fote hote;
And the Duke anone vpsterte, 2385
As he that wrothe was in herte,
And smote aboute with his swerde of stele,
And as a man defendeth him wele.

Segyn, dismounted by Tirri,

was pressed hard,

Tirry him assailleth sharply,
And the Almaignes forth-with him hastely:

In many places wounded is he, 2395
That ah-moste he weneth dede bee.
Whan Guy sawe the Duke afote,
For sorowe ne wiste he noomaner bote:
There he smote to a knyght,
That dede he felled him anoon right. 2400

but rescued by Guy.

The Duke he sette his stede vpon, 2405
And gooth to assaille than their foon.
Fro thense woh they neuere drawe,
Tih they the Almaignes haue slawe.

Þennes nil hii neu*er* gon
C. 2280. Er hii han slawe mani on. 2410
¶ 'Sir douk,' seyd Gyoun,
'Vnderstond to mi resoun:
To þe cite oȝain we wil go,
Ful wele we may it now do;
A þousand þer beþ of armed kniȝtes 2415
Þat sone wiþ ous wil holde fiȝtes;
& we here lenger duelle
For foles we schullen ous telle.'
Into her cite þai ben y-gon,
Togider þai asembled hem ichon, 2420
[1] *i* on an erasure. & at þe alours þai [1] defended hem,
& abiden bataile of her fomen.
C. 2293. ¶ When þemp*er*our y-herd þis,
Þat his sone y-nomen is,
Wiþ loude steuen þan hete he 2425
His folk asayl þat cite
Wiþ schot of bowe and alblast,
Wiþ swerdes, speres schete & cast,
Wiþ laddren steye, þat couþe best.
Þe cite to asail haue þai no rest, 2430
Turnb. p. 86, l. 2203. Wiþ stones & mangunels fast to cast:
[2] MS. *alto dast.* Þe fair walles al to-dast.[2]
MS. 120r. b. & hii wiþ-in fended hem wele aliȝt,
& hii wiþ-outen ȝeld hem gret fiȝt;
Þe Almayns þat ilke day þere 2435
Wiþ gret sorwe y-slawe were.
Strongliche þai asail þe cite,
Ac þat day noþing no speden he;
At euen þat wiþ-drouȝ hem oȝan.
C. 2311. Þemp*er*our was þer-fore a sori [3] man, 2440
[3] MS. *asori* [4] *nomight* MS., not *nought.* Þat he no miȝt [4] of þat cite spede,
No awreken him for no nede.
Þe cite ich day what niȝt
Þai asailed wiþ gret miȝt;

The Almaignes on theim p*ur*sewe so stronge,
That it endure they migħt not longe.
'SIR DUKE Segwyn,' seide Gyoun, At Guy's advice they retreated
'Vnderstonde to my reesoun:
To the Cite ayene y rede we goo,
For weł we may it nowe doo;

For, and we here any lenger duelle,
For fooles we may oure-self telle;
For they been fourty ayenst vs oon.'
Withoute moo to the Citee they bee goon, into the town.
And at ał houres defended theim,
And so refresshed theim-self and their men.
Whanne the Emperour herde this, [p. 76] The Emperor with his whole army
That his soñe so taken is,
With lowde steueñe than co*m*maunded he
His folke in haste to assaille that Citee
Witħ shotte of bowe and arblaste,
Witħ swerdes and speres shete and kaste; now assaulted the city,

Bot they within defende theim a-rigħt,
And they withoute yelde theim eu*er*e grete figħt:
Bot the Almaignes that daie there
Witħ grete sorowe sleyne were,
but it was well defended.

And at Euen they been withdrawe:
The Emp*erour* was sory in his sawe,
That he ne migħte of the Citee spede,
Ne awreke him at his nede.
Bot for ał that the Citee eu*er*y day fourtnygħt The assault, though repeated every day,
They dud assaille witħ grete mygħt,

Ac þe douk, Gij, and Herhaud, 2445
Oft hem makeþ mani asaut,
& miche of his folk þan slouȝ hii,
Wharfore he was i*n* hert sori.
Lordinges, listeneþ to me now!
Of a tresoun ichil telle ȝou: 2450
It was opon a somers day,
þemp*er*our hadde eten, soþ to say;
His huntes he of-sent þo,[1]
& seyd he wald on hunting go
Into þe forest erlike, 2455
Þat þe douk Segyn nouȝt no wite,
No his kniȝtes neu*er* þe mo.
Þat him herd a spie þo,
Þat out of þat ost dede him fast,
C. 2336. To þe douke Segyn he com an hast. 2460
¶ Þe douke Segyn oxed him snelle
What newe tidinges he couþe telle:
'Sir,' quod [he [2]], 'herken to me:
Gode tidinges y telle þe,
Þat þemperour, sikerliche, 2465
Wille huntte to morwe arliche
In his forest priueliche
Wiþ litel folk & nouȝt wiþ miche,
Wiþ also litel als he may.
Y no gabbe nouȝt, for soþe to say.' 2470
Þan he hade seyde þus to Segyn,
'Bi Seyn Richer! leue frende mine,'
Seyd þe douke, 'and it so be,
An hundred bessau*n*s ȝif y þe.'
Þe spie seyd, 'soþe y sigge: 2475
My bodi þerfore in ostage y legge.'
C. 2355. MS. 120v. a. ¶ Þan haþ þe douk y-cleped Gij,
& Herhaud of Arderne sikerlij,
Dan Belin, & dan Gauter,
& þe þridde dan Holdimer, 2480

[1] *þo* altered from *so*.

Turnb. p. 87, l. 2229.

[2] *he* omitted in MS.

And the Duke, Guy, and heraude 2445 was unsuccessful.
Mightly withstode their stronge assaute:
Moche folke of his slowen they,
Wherfor' he was in herte sory. 2448

One day the Emperor

determined to go hunting next morning.

A spy

informed Duke Segyn of it.

The Duke told the news to Guy, Herhaud, Belin, Gauter, Holdiner and Joceran,

& Joceran þat was of Speyne
(Was non wiser in-to Almayne
Turnbull p. 88, l. 2255. A gode *con*seyl for to ȝiue;
þer-fore he was michel to leue).
C. 2361. 'Lordinges,' he seyd, 'what rede ȝe, 2485
[1] MS. *tome* Seþþe þat ȝe be sworn to me[1]?
What is ous best for to done
Of our king Reyner? telle me sone.'
Gij to him answerd snelle,
'þe best rede ichil þe telle: 2490
Kniȝtes we schul han a þousinde,
& bi þe morwe, ȝif we him finde,
Ichil him bidde wiþ hert fre
þat he wil acord wiþ þe,
& þat he cum wiþ þe at ete; 2495
& ȝif he seyþ ouȝt wiþ hete,
þat he it wil graunt for no þing,
Hider we schul bring þe king.
& þou schalt here bileue now,
Opon þi lord go no schaltow; 2500
þi palays þou schalt grayþi,
& riche metes diȝt redi.'
þe douk answerd anon riȝt:
'So help me god, ful of miȝt,
Also þou wilt, þou schalt do.' 2505
Wiþ þat is Gij þennes y-go;
In-to þe way he dede him anon
C. 2400. þer þemp*er*our schuld forþ gon.
Turnbull p. 89, l. 2281. þemp*er*our bi þe morwe aros,
Into his forest he rideþ & gos: 2510
A gret bore þai fou*n*den, y-wis,
& hij vncopled her houndis;
[1] *schrille?* Her hornes þai blewe loude & stille,[1]
Her houndes vrn wiþ gode wille.
¶ þemp*er*our biheld sone wiþ þan 2515
[2] MS. *adiche* Unto a diche[2] þat wat*er* in ran;

asking counsel.

Guy offered to meet the Emperor in the forest with a hundred knights,

ask him to dine,

and at least bring him into the city.

The Duke readily assented,

and Guy set out.

Next morning the Emperor repaired to the forest.
A boar was unsloughed.

Pursuing him,

He seyd, 'y-treyst we ben here:
Sir Tirri, mi frende dere,
[1] MS. ȝou No sestow hou[1] þat ȝonder ride
Kniȝtes? þai ben of gret pride. 2520
MS. 120v. b. On ich halue bisett we beþ,
Nis her nouȝt bot þe deþ.
Felawes þai be þe douke Segyn,
Whom þat god ȝif iuel fin!
Gij of Warwike þer y sey, 2525
Y-armed on his stede an hey.'
'Sir emperour,' quod Tirri anon,
'For þe rode loue þat god was on don,
Ich þe bidde, hennes go now,
For godes loue no lenge bileue þou! 2530
& ichil here bileuen ay,
& ȝif ich Gij mete may,
C. 2436. Wiþ meschaunce y schal him gret,
& al his feren þat y mete.
Turnbull p. 90, l. 2307. Ar ich be ded or nomen be 2535
þou schalt passe al þis cuntre.'
Þemperour seyd, 'for soþe, y nille:
[2] *w* in *wiþ* altered from ȝ. Here ichil wiþ[2] ȝou duelle.'
Hastiliche þai armed hem anon,
& lepe her gode stedes opon. 2540
¶ Wiþ þat come Gij prikeinde,
& a smal tvige in his hond bereinde
Of oliue, in token of pais:
To þemperour he grad as curteys,
& seyd, 'god, þat alle þing may se, 2545
C. 2452. Sir emperour, so loke þe
Þiselue, & al þi meyne,
Þat in place wiþ þe be!
Þe douke Segyn þe sent bi me
Þat trewþe & loue he wil to þe, 2550
& biddeþ þe als his lord dere,
Þeselue, & alle þine fere,

they found
themselves
amid armed men,

among whom
they recognized
Guy.

Tirri advised the
Emperor to
retreat,

but he refused.

Guy approached
with an olive
branch in his
hand,

and in Segyn's
name,

invited the
Emperor
and his com-
panions

Þat wiþ þe ben togider here,
Þat ȝe come to him to þe dinere;
And his gode cite he wil þe ȝelde 2555
Wiþ al his castels he haþ in welde;
& ȝif he haue don oȝain skille,
He wille amende it to þi wille.'
¶ When þemperour herd him speke so,
& so gret loue bede him to, 2560
Þe king of Hongrie[1] he cleped þo,
And sir Tirri he dede also:
'Lordinges,' he seyd, 'what schal we do?
C. 2472. Rede ȝe þat we þider go?'

[1] *o* in *Hongrie* altered from *u*.

[A leaf lost: only the capital letters of about a third of first page, first col., left.]

Þ 2565
Þ . . . . . .
W . . . . . .
Þ . . . . . .
H . . . . . .
Þ 2570
T . . . . . .
W . . . . . .
Ȝ . . . . . .
M . . . . . .
Y 2575
F . . . . . .
Y? . . . . . .

C. 2491.

to dine with the Duke, who was willing to surrender.

WHANNE the Emperour herde him speke so, 2559
And so grete loue shewe him to, 2560
The king of hungry he cleped him to,
And sir Tirry of Gurmeyse also:
'Lordinges,' he seide, 'what shall we doo?
Rede ye that we thider goo?'
Than seide Terry to the Emperour: 2565
'The Duke you dooth grete honour,
Whan he his Citees and Castellis echooñe, [p. 77]
That stronge been of lyme and stooñe,
All deliuere at thyn owne wille
(Thanke thou owest him by reason and skille), 2570
And at thy wille his body doo.
Wende ye thider, y rede you so;
For, if he doo as thise men haue highte,
More Worship the doo he ne mighte;
For with strength thou getest this profre neuere, 2575
With all the power that thou kan keuer.'
'I woll,' quoth the Emperour, 'that it so bee,
Bot that y him nought see,
Till y haue counsailled me
With my baroñs that in their hostage bee.' 2580
With that they gynne for to wende,
And of accorde speke the knightis hende.
To Ransoñe they bee coñe,
And richely there they bee vnder-nooñe;
And Guy him dresseth with all his might 2585
Well to serue bothe baron and knight:
Ther was yoman ne swayne noon,
Bot Guy theim yiftes yaue good woon.

The Emperor asked his men's advice.

On Tirri's representation,

the Emperor accepted the invitation.

At Arascoun

they were served very well.

C. 2509.

C. 2527

Whan it was nyghte, to bedde they goo,
And erly arise withoute moo. 2590 The next morning the Emperor went to church.
To the Chirche the Emperour is goo,
For to here his masse tho.
His eerles and baroñs aboute him gan stonde,
That were of many dyuerse londe;
And the Duke there was noughte, 2595
For the Emperour hym hated in his thoughte.
The same daye tymely [p. 78]
The Duke aroosse fuH eerly: The Duke
Rewthfully he dighte him there
In his sherte allone with̄ open̄ heere: 2600
A stronge roope he toke thoo,
And aboute his nekke he gan̄ it doo.
Than to his prisouners he is goon̄, asked his prisoners
And theim dooth̄ reson̄ oon by oon̄:
'Lordinges, barouñs, y bidde you, 2605
That ye woH prey for me now to intercede for him with the Emperor,
To our̄ lorde, so weH ye may,
That he me foryiue this same day
His wrathe and his male-talent.'
And aH they him graunte with̄ oon̄ assent. 2610 which they promised to do.
Than he threwe his manteH of:
Many man had grete rewthe therof.
In his sherte he stode allone: In his shirt,
For him was made mikeH mone.
To the Emperour̄ he gooth̄ soo, 2615
An Olyue boughwe in his handes twoo,
That pees shuld beetoken̄ betwene theim.
AH weping his wey forth̄ he doth̄ kenne.
Thurgh̄ the strete barefote he gooth̄ barefooted
And barehede in his sherte forsoth̄ 2620 and bareheaded, with a rope round his neck, he went towards the church.
With̄ a roope aboute his swere:
Many man̄ behelde him there.
Erles and Dukes of grete valour̄
For him they preide to the Emperour:

C. 2539.

C. 2561.

C. 2567.

On their' knees vpon' the stoon' 2625
For him they besoughte eu*er*ychoon',
That he wolde haue mercy of Segwyn' [p. 79]
For godd*is* loue and seynte Martyn'.
With that is Segwyn' to the Chirche come,
On his knees he felle fuH sone: 2630
Of the Emperour' he besoughte mercy
For godd*is* loue and oure Lady.

Segyn asked the Emperor's mercy:

'SIR EMPEROUR,' seide Segwyn',
'This daie is come ending' myn',
Bot thou haue mercy on me. 2635
At thy wille it shal bee.
No lenger y ne woH thy wrath dryue,
While y am man' a-lyue,
Bot oute of this londe y shaH goo,
And neu*er*e ayene to come moo. 2640
Here my swerde, thou take it,
And myn' hede of thou smyte,
Or what thy wille is, doo by me
(Myn' owne Lorde, y woH it so bee)
For the folie that y dude, 2645
Whan y slowe thy neuiew in that stede.'

he would rather die than endure the Emperor's wrath any longer

for having killed his nephew.

Than bespake the Emperoures sone
To his fader and seide: 'sir, of yo*ur* benesone,
Segwyn' is a noble baroun'.
Holden' he hath vs in prisoun': 2650
To vs he hath bee fuH kynde,
And to you herafte*r*[1] may bee weH helping.
Bot thou foryiue him thy wrath swithe,
Of me thou shalt neu*er*e bee blithe.'

The Emperor's son seconded Segyn's entreaties.

[1] MS. apparently *heraftis*.

Than seide the Duke Reyner fuH sone: 2655
'Sir Segwyn' is a noble baron'.
Sithe he obeyeth him to thy wille, [p. 80]
Foryiue him thy wrathe, and that is skille,
Of thy neuyew, that he slow by cas;
For in his defence, by god, it was. 2660

Duke Reyner protested that Segyn slew the Emperor's nephew in his own defence.

C. 2579.

C. 2587.

C. 2597.

C. 2607.

And if any woH contrary that y-sey,
Before you to preoue it my gloue y woH ley.
And bot if thou haue of him mercy,
Euer here-after y shalbee thyn enmy.'
Than come forthe sir Gaudemer, 2665 Gaudiner,
And thus to the Emperour he spake there:
'Sir, y loue the Duke ouere aH thing;
For he vs hath doo grete worshipping,
And sworne brethern we bee two: a sworn brother of the Duke's,
And thou hense forewarde him mysdoo, 2670
AH my people y shaH forsende,
And in-to Coloigne y shaH wende: even threatened to make war upon the Emperor if he should refuse to pardon Segyn.
Thy Castellis and Citees, that been so stronge,
Destroye y shaH for thy wronge.
Bot thou mercy of him haue nowe, 2675
AH this y shaH ayenst thy prowe.'
With that come the Styward forthe: After him came the Emperor's Steward,
'Sir, the Duke is moche worthe,
And grete worship he hath vs doo
(Neuere more yet come vs vnto), 2680
Whan he in bataille vs hath nome,
And you hath thus doo hider come.
Bot thou of him haue the rather mercy,
Euere of me herafter thou shalt failly.'
With that cometh forth Guy 2685 then Guy of Warwick,
Of Warrewik, the Knyght hardy:
'Sir, for goddis Loue y bidde the, [p. 81]
On this Duke thou haue mercy and pitee,
And with that y shaH your man become
To serue the, Lorde, aH and some.' 2690
Tirry is than forthe come, and even Tirri.
Of Gormeyse Aubries sone:
'Sir, on this Duke ye must haue mercy
For loue of thise good men, that stonde you by.
Yf thou haue loste thurgh him 2695
Sadok the hende, that was thy kyn,

C. 2613.

MS. fol. 121r. a.
C. 2633.

'Sir emperour, wat hastow do?
Is þe acord made bitven ȝou to?
Astow þe douke Segyn y-kist,
þe strong traitour & vnwrest? 2720
& haþ for-ȝif al in loue
Sadok deþ, þi suster sone?
þat þe wil dred, say me on;
þe misdo þai willen ichon;
When her wretþe and her gilt 2725
So liȝtliche for-ȝif þou wilt,
Hennes forward wil þe dred non,
Schame anouȝ þai wil þe don;
& ȝif þou haddest þe douk anhong,
In þi lond men wold[1] þe dred strong, 2730
& þan after-ward þe treytour Gij,
þat neuer dede ous bot vilayni.

[1] MS. *wil*

In his stede y shaƚƚ bee,
And with aƚƚ my migħt serue the.
Therfor' at an ende y beseche the,
Foryiue him your wrathe witħ herte free.
And bot ye woƚƚ that doo,
Beleue it weƚƚ withoute wórdes moo.'[1]
So longe they haue the Emperour bede,
That he is agreable to their rede.
To theim he seith witħ herte free:
'Lordes, baroñs, herken to me.
Now ye aƚƚ haue bidden so,
For your loue y shaƚƚ thus doo,
And for sir' Guy, that is englissħ,
That so good knygħt and curteys is:
Aƚƚ my wrathe y foryiue him
For loue of the soules of my kynn),
And for y him so mylde see.
Vnderstonde nowe and herken) to me:
For he me crieth mercy withoute pride,
Mercy he shaƚƚ haue to his mede.'

[*A few lines lost* = C 2625—2632.]

[1 Two lines, at least, lost.]

At last the Emperor yielded to their entreaties,

seeing Segyn so humble.

But Duke Otoun blamed the Emperor's lenity.

Ac now þai worþ wiþ þe priue,
& better þan alle we.
Turnbull p. 92, l. 2359. & topen al þis, ȝif Gij wer ded, 2735
We miȝte*n* haue þe lesse dred.'

C. 2645. When Gij herd Ot*us* speke so,
Als a wilde bore he lepe hi*m* to :
'Ot*us* !' quaþ Gij, 'þou schalt daye,
When þou of tresoun clepes ous baye, 2740
Boþe Segyn & eke me :
Þou it schal abie, bi mi leute !'
Him he smot wiþ his fest
[1] *al in* on an erasure. Amide the teþ, riȝt al in[1] ernest.
Ac þe barouns bitvene hem goþ, 2745
& þemp*er*our swore his oþ,
ȝif ani þer were so hardy
Þat dede oþ*er* schame oþ*er* vilanie,
[2] a letter erased before *hewe*. Bren men hi*m* scholde, oþ*er* to-hewe,[2]
[3] *to-drawe*? Oþer al to-hewe[3] at wordes fewe. 2750
Þan doþ þai crie þurch þe cuntraye,
Þat of þo wordes no man schuld saye ;
'& ȝif þer doþ, wiþ-outen no,
Hond oþ*er* fot he schal for-go.'

C. 2675. ¶ Than seyd þemperour on þis maner 2755
To þe douke Segyn oforn hem þer :
'Sir douke, ichil loue þe :
Wiif þou schalt haue bi me.
A feir soster ich haue i*n* mi bour
Ichil þe ȝif,' quaþ þemp*er*our : 2760
MS. 121r. b.; Turnbull p. 93, l. 2385. 'Erneborwe hat þat may.'
Anon he hir spoused þat day.
Þe bridale was holden wiþ game, y pliȝt.
Neuer ȝet nas non fairer in siȝt.
He loued hir, & worþ-schiped swiþe : 2765
To his cite he ladde hir siþe,
He and Ernneborwe his leuedi
[4] MS. *soiormij* þer hii wold soiornij.[4]

Guy, in wrath,

challenged Otoun;

but the Emperor,

on pain of death,

forbade the fight.

THANNE seide the Emperou*r* anone [p. 82] 2755
To the Duke Segwyn, as ye may here echoñ:
'Sir Duke, y shall loue the:
Wif thou shalt haue thurgh me
A faire Suster y haue in my boure:
I shall hir yiue the to p*ar*amoure.' 2760
Erneborugh highte that faire may:
Anone he spoused theim that same day.
The brideale was holde with game and pley,
And therof had a ioyefull day.
He loued hir, and worshipped swithe: 2765
To Bornewik he ledde hir blithe,
He and Erneborgh his wif gentill
There they wolde soiou*r*ne a whill.

Segyn was wedded to the Emperor's sister,

Erneborwe.

Anon after þe tende day
Of her soiourn, soþe to say, 2770
C. 2685. ¶ Gij is to þe douke y-go,
& at him asked leue þo:
'Sir douk,' he seyd, 'gon ich-ille,
In þis cuntre bileue y nille.
In wer ich haue serued þe: 2775
ȝif þou haue eu*er* eft nede to me,
After me þou sende sikerliche,
& ich com to þe hastiliche.'
'Sir,' quaþ þe douk, 'grame*r*ci!
ȝete haue y nouȝt serued þe, sir Gij. 2780
Here, ich bid þe, bileue wiþ me:
Half mine castels, & half mi cite,
Þe worþschip of Lowayn haluen-del,
Ich it þe graun*t*, Gij, fair & wel.'
Gij tok his leue; oway went he: 2785
C. 2700. Þe douke wepe sore, & hadde pite.
Turnbull p. 94, l. 2411. Þemperour þat was so fre,
Wiþ him Gij þan ladde he;
Castels him bede, & cites,
Gret worþschip, & riche fes, 2790
Ac he þe*r*of nold afo,
For noþing þat he miȝt do.
To Almayn went ben he,
To Espire þat riche cite.
¶ Þemperour worþschiped Gij þe fre; 2795
A while wiþ him bileft he.
To pleyn hem þai went bi riuer
Þat of wilde foule ful were;
To her wille an hunting hij gos,
To chace þe hert & þe ros. 2800
On a day as he cam fram hunting
A dromond he seye ariueing.
Þider-ward sir Gij is y-gon,
& gret þe marchandes eu*er*ichon.

And after the twentith̄ day
Of his soio*ur*nyng, the sothe to say, 2770
Guy is to the Duke goo,
And asked him leue thoo.
'Sir Duke,' he seide, 'goo y shaH
In-to my Contrey withoute lenger taryng at aH.
In thy werre y haue serued the, 2775
And yf thou haue any thing' to doo with me,
After me thou sende hardily,
And y shaH come right̄ hastely.'
'Sir,' seide the duke, '*gra*unt mercy!
I haue it not deserued to the, sir Guy. 2780
Abide heer, and duelle with̄ me:
Half my castell*is* thou shaH haue and Citee.'

Guy took his leave of Segyn,

who in vain tried to detain him.

Guy toke his leue, and forthe wente he: 2785
The Duke wepte sore for pitee.
The Emperou*r* also wente his wey, [p. 83]
And Guy with̄ him, the sothe to sey.
Castell*is* were boden him, and Citees,
Riche worship, and grete fees, 2790
And he therof wolde noon),
For noo thing' they kouthe doon);

Guy followed the Emperor

to Spires.

Staying there,

Bot at their' wille an huntyng' they goo
In eu*er*y man*er*e Guy solace for to doo. 2800
ON A DAYE as Guy com̄e fro dere sheting'
By a cooste he sawe a shippe aryving'.
Thiderwardes he is goon̄:
Faire he grette the maryners echoon).

Guy one day, returning from hunting,

MS. fol. 121v. a. 'Lordinges, whe*n*nes com ȝe, 2805
Þat in þis riuer ariued be?
Bi ȝour semblant y se, y-wisse,
Þat ȝe ledde gret richesse.'
Among hem alle *þer* spac on,
Þat couþe speke for hem eu*er*ichon: 2810
'Fram Costentine þe noble y-comen we be:
Lond of peys þan seche we.
Turnbull p. 95, l. 2437. Marchandes we ben of þat lond,
& out y-driuen wiþ michel wrong:
Out of Coyne þe riche soudan, 2815
So prout he is, & of so gret boban,
Þat wiþ .xv. heþen kinges,
& þritti emeraus, wiþ-outen lesinges,
¶ In Costentyn þe noble emp*er*our Ernis
Þai han strongliche bisett, y-wis. 2820
Castel no cite nis hi*m* non bileued,
Þat altogider þai han to-dreued,
& for-brant, & strued, y-wis.
Into Costentyn flowen he is;
Þer he werþ him oȝaines his fon, 2825
Þat secheþ on him for to slon.
Þritti mile men may riden & gon,
Ne schal men finde man non;
& we ben aschaped vnneþe,
Þat we no were to-hewen to deþe. 2830
Y-comen we ben into þis cuntre:
Fowe & griis anouȝ lade we,
Gold and siluer, & riche stones,
Þat vertu bere mani for þe nones,
Gode cloþes of sikelatoun & Alisa*u*ndrinis, 2835
Peloure of Matre, & pu[r]per & biis,
To ȝour wille as ȝe may se;
Swiche be þe tidinges of þat cuntre.'
Gij answerd, 'mi frende fre,
For ȝour tidinges blisced ȝe be! 2840

'Lording*is*,' he seide, 'of whense cōme ye, 2805
That in this contree thus arriued bee?
By your semblant y see, y-wis,
That ye lede grete richesse.'
Amonges theim aH ther spake oon,
That weH kouthe speke for theim, anoon: 2810
'Fro Constantyn-noble cōme bee we, learned from Greek merchants
Londe of pees to seche, in verite.
Marchant*is* we been of that lande,
And oute driuen with stronge hande;
For of Coyne the riche sowdan 2815 that the Soudan
(Proude he is, and of grete boban),
He hath with him fiftene kynges,
And .xxx.ti admirall*is*, withoute lesinges.
In-to Constantyn-noble the Emp*erour* flowen is, had besieged the Emperor Ernis, in Constantinople,
And they haue him beseged, y-wys. 2820
There is him lefte noon other Citee,
Bot aH haue destroied withoute pitee.

after devastating all Greece.

Fro thense we might eskape vnnethe, [p. 84]
Bot were weH nyghe broughte to dethe. 2830
Cōme we bee thus in-to this contree:
Voir and grys enough lede we, They had escaped with difficulty.
Golde and siluer and riche stones,
That vertues bereth for the nones.

Suche bee the tiding*is* of that contree.'
Than answerd Guy: 'my frend*is* free, Guy,

God, for his name seuene,
He bring ȝou to gode heuene!'
When þe marchau*n*des hadde seyd as y say,
a altered from *e*. Gij bitauȝt hem god & gode day.[1]
Vnto his in he is y-go, 2845
And Herhaud he cleped anon him to.
'Herhaud, mi frende, wille we gon?
At þemp*er*our take we leue anon.
MS. 121v. b. Into Costentyn-noble ichil go
To help þemp*er*our of his wo: 2850
Þat wiþ þe soudan biseged is he,
So siggeþ men of þat cuntre;
Þat lond destrud & men aqueld,
& cristendom þai han michel afeld.'
Herhaud answerd, 'y grau*n*t it be: 2855
Miche worþschipe it worþ to þe.'
At þemp*er*our þai toke leue to go,
& he hem grau*n*ted vnneþe þo;
Anouȝ he bedeþ hem castels & tours,
Riche cites, halles, & bours. 2860
Sir Gij toke an hundred of his kniȝtes,
Strongest and best in fiȝtes,
Þat he miȝt in Almayne finde,
Mest y-preised & best doinde.
Turnbull p. 97, l. 2489. Now þai ben to schippe y-went: 2865
Gode winde god haþ hem lent.
To Costentyn-noble þai ben y-come,
& in þe cite her in y-nome.
Ac when þemp*er*our wist atte frome
Þat Gij of Warwike was y-come, 2870
Tvay erls he dede after him go,
& loueliche he bad hem com hi*m* to.
& sir Gij hi*m* goþ to þemperour fre:
'Welcome, sir Gij,' þan seyd he.
'Of þine help gret nede haue we. 2875
Michel ich haue herd speke of þe.

God, for his names seuen),
Bringe you sone to good haũen).'

WHANNE the m*er*ch*aunt*i*s* had tolde as y you sey,
Guy betaughte theim god and good day.
To his ynne he is goo, 2845
Heraude of Ardern) he cleped him to. by the advice of Herhaud,
'Heraude,' he seide, 'woll we goon
At the Emperou*r* to take our leeue anooñ?
In-to Constantyn)-noble woll we goo
To helpe the Emperou*r* oute of woo: 2850 determined to help the Eastern Emperor,
That with a Sowdan) beseged is he,
So telleth me men) of that contree.'

Heraude answerd, 'y g*ra*unte it so bee: 2855
Grete worship it may to*ur*ne the.'
At the Emperou*r* he toke leeue to goo, and took leave of the Western one.
And he him g*ra*unted vnnethe tho.

Thañ toke Guy an hundred knightes The arrival of Guy with 100 knights
Of the stalworthest and best in fightes,
That he might in Almaigne fynde,
And most preised and best doyng'.
Anoñe they bee to shippe wente: [p. 85] 2865
Good wynde god hath theim sente.
To Constantyn)-noble they bee come, at Constantinople
And, whan the Emperou*r* wiste that anooñe,
That Guy of Warrewik with his compaignye
Was logged in his Citee, 2870
Two erles he did for him goo,
That he wolde come him to.
And Guy him gooth to the Emperou*r* free:
'Welcome, sir Guy,' than seide he. was heartily welcomed by the Emperor,
'To thy helpe grete nede haue we. 2875
Moche y haue herde speke of the.

Mine men ben sleyn in þis tide,
& mi lond destrud in ich a side :[1]
Al bot þis ich selue cite
Destrud & brent hauen he. 2880

[1] MS. *aside*.

Fourti þousand þai[2] slowe on a day
Of mine men, as ich ȝou telle may.
Mine men þai slowe, mi sone also,
Wharfore, leue frende, y bede þe to,
ȝif þou miȝt me of hem wreke, 2885
& þe felouns out of mi lond do reke,
Mine feyr[3] douhter þou schalt habbe,
& half mi lond, wiþ-outen gabbe.'
Þan answerd anon sir Gij,
'Sir,' he seyd, 'gramercij ! 2890
& y þe sigge, bi mi leute,
Þat treweliche ichil serue þe
Al þe while þat ich wiþ þe be :
Þerof, sir, þou miȝt leue me.'
At þemperour he toke leue anon, 2895
Vnto his in he gan to gon.
Noyse & cri he herd in þat cite :
He gan oxy what it miȝt be.
He hem oxed what it were,
& what was al þat noise þere. 2900
So mani kniȝtes he seye to armes go,
So mani seriaunce steye to kernels þo.
'Sir,' quaþ a burieys, 'bi seyn Martin,
It beþ þe liþer Sarrazin :
It is þe amiral Costdram, 2905
Þe nevou of þe riche soudan.
So strong he is, & of so gret miȝt,
In world y wene no better kniȝt ;
For þer nis man no kniȝt non
Þat wiþ wretþe dar loken him on. 2910
His armes alle avenimed beþ :
Þat venim is strong so þe deþ :

[2] originally *þai þai*, but the second *þai* crossed out.

[3] MS. *feyir* with the *i* underdotted.

C. 2800.

Turnbull p. 98, l. 2515.

MS. fol. 122r. a.

C. 2824.

Thise Saresyñs haue my men quelled,
And aH this londe made bare felde,
AH bot this oon) Citee
Destroied and brent, y telle the. 2880
Fourty they slowe vpon) a day
Of my men), the sothe to sey.
My men) they slowe and my soñe also,
Wherfor', leef frende, y pray the to, who offered Guy
That thou woldest me vpon) theim wreke, 2885
And the theeues oute of my londe reke:
My faire doughter thou shalt haue the hand of his daughter.
Withh half my londe by the lawe.'
Than answerd him sir Guy,
And seide: 'sir', *gra*unt mercy!' 2890

At the Emperou*r* he toke his leeue anoon), 2895
And to his Inne he is goon).
Grete noyse and crye they herde in the Citee: Guy very soon.
Guy anone asked what that mighht bee.

So many knyghtes he sawe to armes goo, [p. 86] learned that the
And as many sergeant*is* renne to corners thoo.
'Sir,' quoth a burgeis, 'by seynt Martyn),
It is the wicked hooste of Sarasyn:
It is the AdmiraH Cosdram, 2905 Emir Costdram,
The neuyew of the riche Sowdañ.

the strongest of the enemies, was before the city

There nys man) ne knyght noon)
That in wrath darre loke him vpon). 2910
His armes aH venymed bee:
That venym is dethh, truly.

[1] MS. *is*

MS. omits *ne*

In þis world nis[1] man *þat* he take miȝt
þat he ne[2] schuld dye anon riȝt.
þat o*þer* day he dede ous sorwe anouȝ 2915
Of þemp*er*our sone þat he slouȝ,
þat was[3] so gode and stalworþ kniȝt,
þat opon hem had ȝeuen mani fiȝt.
In þis cite so gode kniȝt was non,
þat with wretþe durst loke him on. 2920

Turnbull p. 99, l. 2541.

[3] *was* at end of line in MS.

[4] *cleualrie* MS.

Comen he is wiþ grete cheualrie,[4]
& wiþ him þe riche king of Turkye
Wiþ an hundred Turkes strong:
Beþ non better in non lond.'
¶ & when sir Gij herd þis 2925
þat his ost seyd to him, y-wis,
To his felawes he seyd anon,
C. 2836. 'To armes,' he seyd, 'eu*e*richon!
þe Sarrazins we willen agast.
For godes loue, smiteþ on fast!' 2930
Hastiliche y-armed hij beþ,
Opon her stedes as foule þai fleþ.
Forþ þai went & on hem smite
Wiþ her swerdes þat wil wel bite.
Gij to þe amiral smot so, 2935
Scheld no hauberk nas hi*m* worþ a slo:

MS. fol. 122r. b.

þurch þe body he ȝaf him wounde,
& dede he feld him on þe grounde.
Sir Gij his gode swerd out drouȝ,
þat heued fram þe bodi he slouȝ. 2940
To þemp*er*our he it haþ y-sent,
þat wel glad was of þat present.

Turnbull p. 100, l. 2567.

[5] *nto* MS.

¶ Herhaud smot þe king of Turkie
(Was non feller into[5] Surrie):
þurch þe bodi he him smot, 2945
Ded he feld him doun fot hot.
Wiþ þat com Tebaud prikeinde,
In Fra*un*ce y-bore, a kniȝt wel kinde:

In the worlde nys mañ, and he hy*m* take migħt,
That he ne shulde dye anone rigħt.

Com̄e he is with his Chiualrye, with a great force.
And witħ him the riche king' of Turkye
Witħ an hundred turkes in figħte stronge :
Ther' been) noon) better in noo londe.'
ASSONE AS Guy hatħ herde
What his hooste to him seide,
To his felawes he seide anone,
'To armes swithe eu*er*ichone ! Guy and his men
The sarasyñs we woƗ agaste.
For godd*is* loue, smyte faste.'

immediately sallied out.

Guy to the AdmiraƗ smote so, Guy
That shelde ne hauberk aduailled him not a sloo :
Thurgħ the body he gaue him a wounde, bereft the Emir
That dede he felle anone to grounde.
Guy his swerde anone to him drowe,
That the heuede fro the body flowe. of his head,
To the Empero*ur* he hatħ it sente, which he sent to the Emperor.
That fuƗ glad was of that presente.
Heraude smote the king' of Turkye [p. 87] Herhaud,
(Ther' was nooñ feller in aƗ Surrye) :
Thurgħ-oute the body he him smote,
That dede he felle to the grounde fote hote.
Witħ that com̄e Thebaude priking', Tebaud,
In fraunce borne, a knygħt fuƗ kynde :

Wiþ swiche strengþe he smot Helmadan,
Al was nouȝt worþ he hadde opan. 2950
Þurch his bodi þe laun*c*e glod;
Ded he fel wiþ-outen a-bod.
Gauter come prikeing anon riȝt,
Of Almayne a wel gode kniȝt.
Heteliche he smot Redmadan 2955
C. 2856. (Ȝe no haue herd speke of no swiche man):
Þe bodi atvo he haþ to-deled,
Þat he fel doun in þe feld.
Wiþ þat come sir Morgadour,
Þat was steward wiþ þemp*e*rour. 2960
Kniȝt he was gode & hardi,
Ac traitour he was, ful of envie.
He smot vnto a Sarrazin,
No halp hi*m* nouȝt his Apolin.
Now þai smitte togider comonliche, 2965
& fiȝt þai agin ardiliche.
Þer men miȝt se Gij smite,
& þe Sarrazins heuedes of strike,
Turnbull p. 101, l. 2593. & wiþ him Herhaud also:
Boþe þai strengþed he*m* wele to do. 2970
Þe Sarrazins þai strengþed he*m* for to sle,
To-hewen, & iuel to bise.
Þe Sarrazins hem ȝeld gret fiȝt,
For strong þai ben, & of gret miȝt.
Wiþ þat come Esclandar prikeinde, 2975
A Sarrazin & of foule kinde,
Þe kinges sone of Birrie,
Strong he was for þe maistrie.
Dan Tebaud he felled þo,
Þurch þe bodi he dede þe launce go; 2980
MS. 122v. a. & seþþe he slouȝ a Freyns kniȝt,
In Bleyues he was born ariȝt.
Romirau*n*t com forþ snelle,
A Sarrazin a strong wiþ elle,

Wit̄h suche strengt̄h he smote Elmadan̄,
That him aduailled noo thing' he had on̄. 2950

Gauter' co̅me priking' anone wit̄h that, Gauter,
Of Almaigne a good knyḡht of astat.
He began̄ to smyte to Amodan 2955
(Thou hast not herde of a feller man̄) :
His body in two he hat̄h clefte,
And dede in the felde it hat̄h lefte.
Wit̄h that co̅me fort̄h Morgadour' : Morgadour,
Styward he was wit̄h the Emperou*r*. 2960
Knyḡht he was good and hardy,
And traytour' he was, and fuꝗ of enuy.
He gañ to smyte to a sarasyn̄,
That noo-thing' him helped Appolyn̄.
Than they smyte to-gider manly, 2965 all distinguished themselves.
The bataille they begynne biggely.
There men̄ miḡht see Guy smyte
The sarasyns heedes of at a strike,
And wit̄h him heraude also :
Bothe they strengt̄h theim weꝗ to doo. 2970

But the Saracens rallied;

The sarasyn̄s theim yiue grete fiḡhte,
For stronge they bee, and of grete miḡhte.
Wit̄h that co̅me Escladar priking', 2975 Esklandar slew Tebaud.
A Sarasyn̄ he was of bigge making'.

Romiraunt

Y-slawe he haþ dan Guinman, 2985
A strong kniȝt he was & an Aleman.
Wiþ þat come forþ an amireld,
A Sarrazin of wicked erd,
Dan Gauter he haþ y-slawe,
& gode Gilmin his felawe. 2990
When Herhaud þat of-seye þo,
In his hert him was ful wo;
An amiral he smot so,
Ded he feld hi*m* an hast[1] þo,
& mani anoþ*er* he haþ aqueld, 2995
& adoun feld in þe feld.
Sone so Esclandar y-seye þis,
To awreke þe amiral lef hi*m* is.
To Herhaud he smot heteliche,
& he hi*m* mett hardiliche; 3000
Heteliche þai smiten togider þo,
Þat of her hors þai fellen bo.
Seþþen þai drouȝ her brondes of stiel,
& smiten togider hard & wel,
To-hewe hauberk & scheldes also, 3005
Gode bodis þai ben boþe to.
Of her helmes þe flours gan fle,
So heteliche togider smiten he.
Herhaud goþ him driueand fast,
C. 2900. His heued to smiten of on hast. 3010
Ac so gret socour hi*m* com þer,
An hundred Turkes & her pouer;
Herhaud þai gin alle asaile,
& neye hadde slain hi*m* i*n* þ*at* bataile,
No hadde Gij[2] þat y-seye, þat was sorij; 3015
Hastiliche he com hi*m* to socourey.
His gode brond þan drouȝ he,
Þe heued of a Sarrazin he dede of fle,
& anoþer he dede also;
Þe þridde to deþ he dede do. 3020

[1] MS. *anhast*

Turnbull p. 102, l. 2619.

[2] *Gij* added over the line.

slew Guinman.

An Emir

Thus thise sarasyn̄s with̄ grete pride [p. 88] slew Gauter and Gilmin.
Many *crist*en knygh̄tes to deth̄ they leye aside. 2990
Whanne heraude hath̄ that seyn),
Herhaud
Therof he was noo-thing fayn).
To Amylorde he smote so, slew an Emir,
That dede he felle to grounde tho.

Whan) Escladar sawe this, but was violently assailed by Esclandar
To awreke Amylorde leef him) is.
To heraude he smote hertly,
And he him mette boldely. 3000

and others,

So egre was heraude to slee Eskladar',
That, or he was any-thing' war', 3010
An hundred turkes ther' were com̄e,
And heraude all̄-most they had nom̄e.

Whan Guy sawe that, he was sory: 3015 but Guy came to his aid.
Hastly he gooth̄ him to soco*ur* truly.
His good bronde in honde helde he:
The hede of a Sarasyn) he dud of flee.

Turnbull p. 103, l. 2645.

Herhaud he socourd in þat nede,
& dede hi*m* lepe opon his stede.
Þe Sarrazins anon gun þai mete,
Mani on þ*er* her liif þai lete,
Mani on þ*er* dyed in aiþer[1] side, 3025
Ac þe Sarrazins wers gan bi-tide.
Sir Gij & alle his feren,
Þe Griffou*ns* þat gode weren,
Han ou*er*-comen & aqueld;
To-hewen þai leyen in the feld. 3030
Toward her ost þai ben fleinge,
& Gij hem after fast folweinge;
Ar hij þe doun were ou*er* gon,
Y-slawe hij ben & to-hewen ichon.
Esclandar is oway fleinde, 3035
Ou*er* þe dounes fast erninde,
& al to-broken[2] his scheld is,
His helme al to-dassched[3], y-wis.
Gij it of-þouȝt when he it seye,
þat he so liȝteliche oway fleye: 3040
'Esclandar,' seyd Gij, 'wende oȝain to me,
& forsoþe al siker þou be;
Drede þe of no noþer þan of me,
Ones to iusti ich oxi of þe.'
Esclandar seyd, 'artow Gij? 3045
Ich þe defende sikerly.
Bi Mahoun þat ich leue opon,
Neuer no schal ich oway gon,
No neu*er* schal y bliþe be,
Til ich þat heued binim þe; 3050
Bihoten ich it haue a maid*en* of p*ris*,
Þe soudans douhter þat wel fair is.'
Her steden þai turned snelle,
& to-gider þai smite*n* wiþ gode wille;
Esclandar first smot Gij 3055
þurch þe scheld as kniȝt hardi;

MS. 122v. b.

[1] MS. *inaiþer*

[2] MS. *alto broken*

C. 2926.

[3] MS. *dassched*

Turnbull p. 104, l. 2671.

C. 2943.

Heraude he socoureth weH in that nede,
And made him worthe vpon) his stede.

Many were slain,

but the Saracens had the worse.

Than Guy and heraude bothe in fere
With their felawes, that good were,
Haue discomfited and quelled
And the sarasyns hewen) in the feeld. 3030

The Saracens fled.

Guy, pursuing them,

called upon

Esclandar, to

turn and joust with him.

He answered that

he would have Guy's head for the Soudan's daughter.

Gij smot him anon riȝt,
Scheld no hauberk halp hi*m* no wiȝt;
He smot hi*m* þurch at þat chau*n*ce
Þurch þe bodi wiþ his launce. 3060
Esclandar fleye forþ a wel gode pas,
Sir Gij of-toke hi*m* nouȝt, þ*er*for wo hi*m* was;
To his felawes he is y-go,
Riȝt to þe cite he ȝede him þo.
Þe Sarrazins were ou*er*-come, 3065
Þerfore þai were bliþe, all *and* some.
Þemperour of-sent Gij hi*m* to,
& miche honour he haþ him do.
MS. fol. 123r. a. 'Gij,' quaþ he, 'þou art me dere,
Þou schalt bileue wiþ me here: 3070
Mi feir douhter, þat is of p*ri*s,
Ichil þe ȝiue to spouse y-wis;
Turnbull, p. 105, l. 2697. Þou schalt ben emp*er*our after me,
Þou art a kniȝt of gret bounte.
Al þo þat ben to me serueinde, 3075
Ichil þai be to þe boweinde.'
'Gram*er*ci,' seyd sir Gij anon;
'A fair ȝift is þis now on.'
Þe steward come forþ bliue,
More treytour nas non oliue; 3080
His name was hoten Morgadour,
God ȝif him euel auentour!
[1] a dot over the *t* in *gret*. Toward Gij he bar gret[1] ond,
& seþþe he died þurch his hond.
Quaþ Morgadour, 'sir, þ*at* wil wele be, 3085
For Gij is curteys, gentil, & fre;
When he schal þi douhter spousy,
Riȝt is þat we him onoury.'
Ac what so he seyd bifor Gij þo,
C. 2972. ȝif he may, to deþ he wille hi*m* do. 3090

Esclandar went oway fleinde,
Toward her ost fast prikeinde;

After a fierce combat,

Esclandar fled with a lance through his body.

Guy and his fellows returned to the city.

Thus they thanked god all and some, 3065
That the Sarasyns were ou*er*-come.

All were blithe.

The Emperor

again offered Guy his daughter,

and promised to make him his successor.

But his steward,

Morgadour,

was envious at that,

and secretly

plotted mischief against Guy.

Esclandar,

þurch þe bodi he bar a trounsoun,
Wiþ boþe honden he held him to þe[1] arsoun.
Boþe bifore & eke bihinde, 3095
þe blod gan out fast winde,
His helme in þe on half honginde,
& his visage al bledeinde.
His scheld to held hadde he no miȝt,
He drad him to dye anon riȝt. 3100
To þe soudans pauiloun he come,
þe soudan him bi-knewe anon :
'Esclandar, when comestow?' seyd he ;
'In strong fiȝt þou hast y-be.
Were þou alon at þe cite? 3105
Say me who haþ þus wou*n*ded þe?'
'Sir,' quaþ he, 'ichil þe telle
Of hard tidinges wel snelle :
Y-lorn þou hast þe amiral Cosdram[2]
þat leuest þe was of ani man, 3110
& þe king of Turkie þou hast forgon,
Of hem no tit þe neuer help non.
& alle þe best men y-bore
Bifor þe cite þou hast forlore.'
Þan answerd þe riche soudan, 3115
þat hadde no gamen of þan :
'Hi*m* is þan sum socour y-come,
Whar-þurch mi Turkes be me binome?'
'Sir,' quaþe Esclandar, 'y-wis,
An onwrast gome y-comen *þer* is ; 3120
C. 2300. Socour he haþ gret & beld,
In þe warld nis swiche a scheld[3] ;
Gij of Warwike his name it is,
Sterner þan ani lyoun, y-wis.
His strokes no may noman dreye, 3125
þat he ne most dye on hye.
Wiþ him he haþ an hundred kniȝtes
Of Almayne, þe best in fiȝtes ;

[1] *e* in *þe* added over the line.

Turnbull, p. 106, l. 2723.

[2] *s* on an erasure.

MS. fol. 123r. b.

[3] MS. *ascheld.*

Turnbull, p. 107, l. 2749.

all bloody,

came to the
Soudan

with the bad
news

of their losses,

and told of

Guy's valour.

Þurch þe bodi þus me he smot,
Dede ich am, wele y wot.' 3130
¶ Þan swore a gret oþ þe soudan
Bi Mahoun þat he leued opan,
Þat neu*er* glad no worþ he
What he haue y-nome þ*a*t cite;
For asayle he it wille do 3135
Ar þe þridde day be ago.
Anon a spie it herd[1] þis,
Þat to Gij it nold for-hele y-wis.
Sone he com to þe cite;
Al þis to Gij þan teld he, 3140
Þat þe soudan wiþ his men elle
Þe cite wil aseyle snelle.
Ac þemp*er*our wist þer-of nouȝt
Þat so strong tiding þ*er* were y-brouȝt.
Ac when he wist þe soþe herof, 3145
C. 3020. Ernist him þouȝt, & no scof.
¶ Þemperour made hi*m* bliþe þo
Þat ou*er*-comen weren his fo,
& Gij to þemp*er*our is y-go,
& swiþe feyr he gret him þo. 3150
'Sir,' quaþ he, 'be bliþe & glad;
Gode tidinges me haþ ben seyd.'
Þemp*er*our of-sent his foules þo,
Oscuriis, faucouns, & ierfaukes also;
Gon he wil to þe riuer, 3155
Him to solas & play þer.
Seþþe he of-sent of his Gregeys,
Þat gode weren & curteys.
To þe riuer þai ben y-gon
Wher foules were mani on. 3160
Wiþ þat come forþ sir Morgadour,
Þat steward was wiþ þemperour,
& seyd to Gij, 'mi frende dere,
Y þe loue in gode manere.'

[1] So MS. for *herd* or *iherd*?

Turnbull, p. 108, l. 2775.

MS. fol. 123v. a.

The Soudan swore a great oath to take Constantinople.

A spy told this to Guy,

but the Emperor as yet knew it not.

The Emperor

THE EMPEROUR was fuł gladde tho
That ou*er*e-com̄e thus was his foo.

Goo he wołł to the Ryuere,
To pley him and to solace there.
The Empero*ur* sente for [his fowlis] thoo, [p. 89]
Ostreyes and faukons, girfaukes also.

went a-hawking.

Thereafter

Sethe he sente for his knygħtes,
That good were and curteys.
To Ryuer' they been) goon)
Ałł, bot Guy is lefte at hoom). 3160
Tho com̄e to him Morgadour',
That Styward was witħ the Empero*ur*.
To Guy he seide : ' my frende dere,
With herte y loue the in good manere.

Morgadour,

feigning friendship for Guy,

Ac alle þat he seyd, Gij to bitraye, 3165
Þat was wele sen in his last daye.
Non no may so wele tresoun do
So may he þat his trust is to.
Ȝete seyd to him Morgadour,
'Castels ich haue, & mani feir tour, 3170
Riche cites, & ful strong,
To þine wille þou hem afong;
C. 3038. Michel y desire þi loue to haue.
Go we togider wiþ game & plawe:
Into þe chaumber go we baye, 3175
Among þe maidens for to playe;
Turnbull, p. 109, l. 2801. At tables to pleye, & at ches;
Wele we may don it y-wis
Bifor þi leman Clarice so fre,
Þemperours douhter briȝt of ble. 3180
& lete we þemperour to wode go,
To chace þe hert & þe ro.'
'Sir,' quaþ Gij, 'wille we go?
When þou it wilt, it schal be do.'
Into þe chaumber þai ȝede þo 3185
Hond in hond y-fere bo.
To þe mayden þai come wel sket,
Þat curteysliche hem haþ y-gret.
'Sir Gij,' sche seyd, 'welcome þou be!
Cum sitt & pleye þe here wiþ me.' 3190
C. 3050. He toke þe maiden & hir kiste:
Þat of-þouȝt þe steward vnwreste.
He hir hadde loued mani a day,
& wende haue spoused þat feir may.
Þe cheker þai oxy & þe meyne; 3195
Bifor þe maiden þan pleyen he.
Y-sett þai han þe first game,
Þe steward it les, bi godes name.
Seþþe þai han anoþer y-gonne,
Anon it haþ Gij y-wonne, 3200

invited him

Moche y desire thy loue to haue,
And therof hertly y the craue :
And in-to the Chambre lete vs goo, 3175
Amonges the maydeñs soṁe sportes to doo

to have some pastime in the chamber

Before thy lemman, Clarice the free,
Themperours doughter of bright blee, 3180
Whiles the Emperour is to wode goo,
To chace the herte and the Roo.'

of the Emperor's daughter.

Guy,

In-to the Chambre they wente thoo 3185
Honde in honde bothe twoo.
To the maide they coṁe withoute lette,
That curteisly theim hath grette.
'Sir Guy,' she seide, 'welcoṁe thou bee !
Is it thy wille, coṁe sitte by me.' 3190
He toke that mayde and hir kiste :
That forthoughte the Styward in his breste ;
For he hir had loued many a daye,
Wenyng to haue spoused that faire maye.
Than at Chequer with the meyne 3195
Before that maide pleyden they.
The first game they haue sette, [p. 90]
And the Styward it loste withoute lette.
Than another anone they haue begonne,
And that also hath Guy wonne, 3200

having been tenderly welcomed by the maiden,

played at chess with the steward,

and won

several games.

MS. fol. 123v. b. & þe þridde ful hastiliche.
þe steward was sori sikerliche;
Turnbull, p. 110, l. 2827. Al mody he ros vp þo:
Wroþ & sori he was bo.
'Gij,' quaþ he, 'bi-leue þou here, 3205
Þiself & Clarice, þi pleye-fere,
Al what ich come now son oȝe.'
'Anon,' seyd Gij, 'it schal so be.'
Out hi*m* went Morgadour,
At his in he tok a chasour, 3210
To þemp*er*our he goþ riȝt.
When þemp*er*our hadde of hi*m* siȝt,
Oȝaines him he is y-gon,
& tidinges he oxed him anon.
C. 3066. 'Now forþ, sir steward,' he sede, 3215
'Comestow for gode or for qued?
Whi comestow so prikiinge?
Tel it me wiþ-outen lesinge.
Ȝif þou of Sarrazins hast herd ouȝt,
Tel it me; for-hele it nouȝt.' 3220
'Sir,' quaþ he, 'y schal þe telle:
þi schame forhele y nille.
An soudour þou hast wiþ þe,
& wil þat þou y-schent be.
þi douhter, þat so feir is, 3225
Forlay he haþ, for-soþe y-wis.
Into hir bour wiþ strengþe he ȝede,
& bi þi douhter his wille he dede.'
Turnbull, p. 111, l. 2853. Ȝif þou ne me leuest, hom þou fare,
Ȝete þou schalt him finde þare. 3230
þer þou miȝt him finde, y-wis,
C 3080 & þi douhter clippe & kisse.
þerfore y com þe to say,
For þi schame forhele y no may.
Ȝif þou him finde in þat stede, 3235
Into þi prisoun þou him lede,

And the Styward vp̄ roosse thoc : The steward left him,
Wrothe and angry he was also.
'Guy,' quoth̄ he, 'y leue the here, 3205
Thy self and Clarice pley in fere,
Tiħ that y com̄e ayene.' promising to return soon ;
'It shalbee doo,' quoth̄ Guy, 'certen̄.'
Oute wente him Morgadour',
And at the stable he toke a chasour', 3210
And to the Emperour he gooth̄ right. but he went to the Emperor
And, whan the Emperour had of him sight :

'Why com̄est thou so yerne priking'?
Telle me withoute lesyng'.
Yf thou of the Sarasyns here aught,
Telle it me and concele naught.' 3220
'SIR,' QUOTH he, 'y shaħ the telle : to accuse Guy
Thy shame noo lenger couere y nelle.
A Souldiour thou hast with̄ the,
That thinketh̄ for to shende the.
Thy doughter, that so faire is, 3225 of having dishonoured the princess,
He hath̄ leyn) by, ywis.
In-to hir' boure with̄ strength̄ he yede :
By thy doughter his wille he dede.
And thou beleue me not, hom) thou fare,
And to-geder thou shalt fynde theim there.' 3230

counselling that he should be punished

& in þi court þou deme him do;
For treitour he is, y telle þe to:
Þe more adouted þou schalt be
Of alle þi regne, y telle þe. 3240
Þer-fore ne wonde þou no-þing
Nouȝt for him no his helping;
After-ward þat he demed is,
& þi court of þat treytour deliuerd is,
MS. fol. 124r. a. Into Almayne ichil gon 3245
To þemperour Reyner anon;
Socour fram him ichil bringe,
& deliuer þi lond, wiþouten lesinge,
Of alle þine dedeliche fon,
Þat þine men haue sleyn ichon.' 3250
'Who is þat?' þemperour sede.
'Gij of Warwike, so god me rede!
Þou do him nim, & binde fast,
& in þi prisoun þou do him cast.'
Quaþ þemperour, 'lat now be, 3255
No speke nouȝt so of him to me:
Oȝaines me misdo he nold
Nouȝt for tventi somers of gold,
C. 3100. No for to ben al to-hewe:
So gode a kniȝt he is & trewe. 3260
& ȝif he is þer-in, wele be it so:
Wiþ hir his wille he may do;
For mi douhter ichim bi-hote habbe,
Nil ich nouȝt of couenant gabbe.'
¶ When þe steward him haþ bi-þouȝt 3265
Þat þemperour nold here him nouȝt,
Hom to his in he is y-go,
& aliȝt of his palfrey þo.
Anon in-to chaumber he ȝede,
& to Gij of Warwike he sede, 3270
'Gij, þou art ful wele wiþ me,
Þerfore ich-il kiþen it þe:

as a traitor.

'Who is that?' the Emperour seide. The Emperor
'Guy,' quoth he, and gan vpbreide.
'Anone thou him take, and bynde faste, [p. 91]
And in thy prison thou doo him kaste.'
Quoth the Emperour: 'lete this bee; 3255 refused to believe
For so shuld thou not speke of him to me.

the story.

Yf he haue assentted therto,
With hir his wille for to doo,
She is his, and him hir yiuen y haue,
Me to socour, helpe, and saue.'
Whan the Styward vnderstode in his thoughte 3265 The steward,
That the Emperour herde it noughte,
Weth sone him forthoughte thoo, having failed in this plot,
And home ayene he gan goo.
Anone in-to the Chambre he yede,
And to Guy thise wordes he seide: 3270 returned to Guy,

To þemperour y-teld it is,
Bi þe lord seyn Denis,
[1] *in* added over the line.
þat wiþ strengþe þou com i*n*[1]-to his bour 3275
& has forleyn his douhter wiþ desonour.
& ȝif he þe may ouer-go,
He wil þe bren o*þer* slo.

& ich hot þe þat þou hennes fle, 3280
þat he nouȝt of-take þe.'

C. 3129. Turnbull, p. 113, l. 2905.
'Bi god,' quaþ Gij, 'þat were wrong,
þat y schold here mi deþ afong
For þing þat ich haue gilt non, 3285
No neuer þouȝt it to don.
An arnemorwe, when he out ȝede,
Miche he me o loue bede;
Hou schuld ich euer sik*er* be
Of ani bi-hest men hotes me? 3290
MS. fol. 124r. b.
For þemp*er*our me seyd þo,
And trewelich me bihete þ*er*to,
þat he me wold gret worþschipe,
& now he me wil sle wiþ schenschipe
For þe speche of a losanger, 3295
& of a feloun pautener.'
Out of þe chaumber he is y-go:
Sori & dreri he was þo.
To his in he ȝede swiþe,
And cleped his felawes bliue. 3300
'Lordinges,' he seyd, 'to armes snelle!
Here wil we no longer duelle:
To þemp*er*our y-wraid we beþ,
Alle he wil don ous to þe deþ.
Bi þe treuþe y schal our lord ȝeld, 3305
þat heuen and erþe haueþ i*n* weld,
C. 3153. Er þan we be nomen & ded,
So mani schal dye of her ferred,

'Guy, to the Empero*ur* tolde it is,
By the Lorde sainte Denys,
That with̄ strength̄ tho[u] com̄e in-to his boure,
And hast defouled his dough̄t*er* with̄ dishono*ur*.
And if he may the com̄e to,
Brenne he woł the or fordoo,
And that shuld fuł sore greue me;
Wherfor' y counsaille, thou hense flee,
Leste he take greuously the,
Yf thou befounde in this Citee.'

and advised him to flee from the Emperor, who in consequence of a calumny was resolved to slay him.

'ALLAS,' QUOTH Guy, 'that were wronge,
And y shuld here deth̄ fonge
For thing that y gilte haue noon',
Ne neu*er*e though̄te it to doon'.
To day, before he oute yede,
Gretly he me loued, as he seide.'

Guy, filled with indignation,

Oute of the Chambre he is goo: [p. 92]
Sory and heuy he was thoo.
To his Inne he yede, y you telle,
And cleped to him his felawes ał.
'Lording*is*,' he seide, 'arme we vs at this tyde;
For here noo lenger' we woł abide.
To the Emperour tolde it is,
So that he woł vs slee, withoute mys.

went to tell the news to his fellows.

And, or we bee take or dede,
Many of theim shuł dey to their' mede.'

Turnbull, p. 114, l. 2931.

Þat it worþ aboȝt wel strong
Þat ich am bi-wrayd wrong!' 3310
To armes þai went wiþ þat ichon;
Out of þe cite þai ben y-gon,
& went toward þe heþen men,
Wiþ þem to holden & to ben,
To help þe heþen men ichon. 3315
Wiþ þat com þemperour anon:
Fram þe riuer he come rideinge,
& wiþ his folk fast prikeinge;
Feir weder it was, & miri also,
Þe briȝt armes he seye þo. 3320
¶ Þemperour hem seye, & knewe Gij,
For he come hem swiþe neye.
At an herhaud þan asked he,
'This armed folk, what may þis be?'
'Sir,' quaþ he, 'it is Gij, 3325
Þat in wretþe fram þe wil parti;
Vnto þe soudan he wil fare,
& wirche þe sorwe & michel care
Þurch wraying þat teld him is:
Wele y wot þat soþe it nis. 3330
Wele it semeþ þat wroþ is he;
Al armed on his stede ich him se.'

C. 3175. When þemperour herd þis,
Alle droupeninde he was y-wis,

MS. fol. 124v. a. Turnbull, p. 115, l. 2957.

He gan to prike, & þat anon: 3335
As hauk *þat* fleyþe his hors gan gon.
After Gij loude he gradde þo:
'Abide & speke me now to!
For godes loue lete now be;
Whi wiltow, sir, go fro me? 3340
Ȝif ich ouȝt haue agilt to þe,
For godes loue þou say it me;
Be it in dede oþer in speche
That ani þe han agilt, y þe biseche,

To armes wiṫ that they wente echoon,
And oute of the Citee they bee goon.
They wente toward the hethen men̄,
As wiṫ theim to holde and to been.

They armed themselves, and left the city, to go over to the heathen.

WITH THAT com̄e the Emperou*r*[1] riding:
Fro the Ryuer he was com̄yng.

Faire weder it was, and mery day also,
The brigḣte armes he sawe thoo. 3320
Whan the Emperou*r* theim sey,
He hyed fast, tiḣ he com̄e theim ney.
Of an heraude than asked he,
Thise armed knigḣtes what they bee.
'Sir,' quoṫ he, 'it is Guy, 3325
That in wraṫ fro the woḣ departi,[2] truly.
To the Sowdan he woḣ nowe fare,
And werke the moche sorowe and kare.'

But in their way,
they met the Emperor,
who, astonished,

Whanne the Emperou*r* herde this,
All mou*r*nyng he was, y-wys.
He gynneṫ to prike, and that anone, 3335
His hors as fast, as he migḣt goon.
After Guy he cleped thoo: [p. 93]
'Sir Guy,' he seide, 'noo farther thou goo.
For godd*is* loue lete nowe bee,
And abide stille wiṫ me. 3340
And if y haue ought offended the,

rode after Guy,
and asked
what he had to complain of,

[1] Emperou*r* MS. [2] *departi* altered from *departe* MS.

To þi wille it schal amended be, 3345
& topon al oþer y loue þe.
Wele ich wene þat þe soudan, y-wis,
To whom al Percie atended is,
After þe haþ sent: ich vnderstond so.
He þe schal habbe, & y forgo. 3350
Gold & siluer he may ȝiue þe,
& feffe þe wiþ mani a riche cite;
þer-fore þou wilt wiþ him be,
& strongliche holden oȝaines me.'
'Sir,' quaþ sir Gij to þemperour, 3355
C. 3200. 'No was ich neuer þi traitour,
And ȝif god wil, y nil nouȝt be,
þerwhiles þe lif is in me.
Me was y-teld biforn now riȝt
Of on þat is þi priue kniȝt, 3360
Turnbull, p. 116, l. 2983. þat þou no hadest to don wiþ mi seruise,
& þat y þe serue wiþ feyntise;
And þat ich was biwrayd to þe
(For þi nold ich no longer here be),
And þat þou wost do me to-hewe, 3365
& mine barouns, þat ben so trewe.
For þi y þouȝt þat y go scholde
To hem þat mi seruise ȝeld me wold;
Ac for al Damas & þat cuntre
Nold ich haue holden oȝaines te.' 3370
¶ þemperour þan him nome
Bitvene his armes, & seyd anon,
'Nay, sir Gij,' he seyd, 'bi seyn Denis,
It no was nouȝt so, y-wis.
Mi dere frende Gij, oȝain þou go 3375
(Lordinges, barouns, biddeþ him so);
For to þine wille it is alle,
Alle þat min is, *and* ben schal.
MS. fol. 124v. b. Ac biwrayed þou war to me,
& þer-fore haue he maugre! 3380

At thy wille it amended shalbee.'

or if he was going over to the Sultan,

to be made a rich man.

'Sir,' quoth Guy to the Emperour, 3355 Guy answered
'Was y neu*er*e yet traytour',
Ne, if god woꝗ, noon wolbee,
Whiles the lif is with-in me.
Me was tolde before nowe rigꝗt that he had been told
Of oon) that is thy priue knygꝗt, 3360

that the Emperor made light of his service.

That thou woldest me aꝗ to-hewe, 3365
And my baroñs, that bee so trewe.
Therfor' y thoughte that y serue wolde
Suche oon) that my seruyse yelde sholde.'

The Emperor embraced him,

and begged him not to believe it.

'My dere frende Guy, ayene thou goo 3375
(Lording*is*, baroñs, bidde him also);
For at thy wille it is aꝗ,
Aꝗ that myn) is, and bee shaꝗ,'

3380

Neu*er* eft worþ non loued of me
Þat ouȝt sigge bot gode of þe.'
Þemp*er*our þan to Gij seyd,
'Þi wille þou do bi þat mayde.'
Sir Gij kist þemp*er*our þo, 3385
& to þe cite þai ben y-go.
Turnbull, p. 117, l. 3009. Þo wist wele Gij bi_þan,
[1] or *Bitrayd*, *a* being altered from *e?* Bitreyd[1] him hadde his foman;
Ac no semblau*n*t þerof he no made,
C. 3222. No no þing to him seyde. 3390
An armorwe erliche
Þemp*er*our aros, sikerliche;
Anon he seyd to Gij his speche:
'Herken to me, y þe biseche.
In þis morning anon 3395
We worþ aseyled of our fon,
Of Sarrazins þat misbileued be;
Alle for soþe y telle it to þe.
Þe soudan himselue wil þ*er* be.
A spie for soþe teld it me, 3400
Þat hij þe cite wil asayli,
& þat hij þennes nil p*ar*ti,
Al fort he haue nome þis cite,
Or þat it destrued be.'
Þemp*er*our seyd, 'sir Gij þe fre, 3405
Als so þou wilt it schal be.
Þe cite alle op þe y do
Wiþ Cristes blisseing þ*er*-to.
Ȝif hij ous seyl we schul ous were;
Þe cite is strong, þai mow it nouȝt dere.' 3410
Gij þat *con*stable cleped him to,
Þat gode kniȝt was, & wise also:
Turnbull, p. 118, l. 3035. Tristor he hete wiþ þe berd blowe,
Lord & douke of Almayne, y trowe.
'Sir Tristor,' he seyd, 'listen to me: 3415
Aseyled we worþ, siker þou be.

Also the Emperour to Guy seide,
'Thy wille to doo by that maide.'
Guy kiste the Emperour tho, 3385
And ayene to the Citee they been goo.
Tho wiste Guy well by than,
Betrayed him had his fooman.

Guy knew then who had betrayed him.

On morowe, full sikirly,
The Emperour aroosse eerly.
To him seide Guy this speche:
'Herken to me, sir, y the beseche.
In this mornyng anoon [p. 94] 3395
Assailled we shalbee of our foon,

Next morning

the Emperor was informed

of the new assault intended by the Saracens.

And the Sowdan him-self woll there bee;
For a spye it tolde me, 3400
That this Citee he woll assaille,
And neuere thense departe, withoute faille,
Till he haue take the Citee,
Or that it discomfited bee.'
The Emperour seide: 'sir Guy the free, 3405
As thou wolt so shall it bee.
All the cure vpon the y doo
With cristes blissing and myn therto.'

The Emperor said that all should be done at Guy's will.

Guy the Constable cleped him to,
That good knyght was, and wise also:
Trystour he highte with berde bolde,
Lorde and duke of Samary holde.
'Sir Tristour,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me: 3415
Assailled we shalbee, y telle the.

Guy consulted with the constable,

Tristor,

Þer-of þou most birede þe,
ȝif we wille were þis cite,
Oþer we wille oȝain hem te,
At paþes that destrued be, 3420
& mete we hem þer on þe doune,
Acumbre he*m* & legge hem doune.'
MS. fol. 125r. a. 'Sir,' anon seyd the *con*stable,
C. 3254. 'Þis ich speche schal be stable.
Do þan grede þurch þe cite 3425
Þat alle redy armed be,
Alle þat armes may welde,
And who so þat feyneþ for couward be helde.'
Bi þe morwe þai ben armed wel,
Bi tale .xx. thousend hauberks of stiel, 3430
Out of þe cite þai ben y-go
Wiþ gret noise & din also.
'Lordinges,' quaþ Gij, 'herkeneþ to me
ȝe þat here asembled be,
Of ȝour kinde þat is y-slawe, 3435
Of edwite & of missawe,
Þat ous is don, thenke we *þer*-on,
& baldeliche aseyl we our fon;
Turnbull, p. 119, l. 3061. For Sarrazins ous aseyle wille,
Alle for soþe y ȝou telle. 3440
We wil hem mete wiþ spere & scheld
At þe narwe paþe bi-tven þe held.
Now biþenkeþ ȝou wele to don,
& awreke ȝour lond of ȝour fon.
Of ȝour londes & ȝour citez, 3445
Þat destrud & wasted beþ,
ȝou to awreke bi-þenkeþ ȝou,
& strongliche aseyleþ hem now.
Bot ȝe were ȝou wele & bliue,
& hij mow ȝou of þe feldes driue, 3450
Alle we ben ded o*per* nome,
& in þraldome eu*er* more wone.

how to meet the Saracens.

Therfor' thou must aduise the,
How we may best kepe this Citee,
Or we shaH ayenst theim goo,
And kepe theim by patthes to and fro : 3420
Mete we may theim) on the Downe,
And theim accombre and ley to grounde.'
'Sir,' seide the Constable,
'AH thy speche y holde it auayleable.
Doo than crye thurgh the Citee 3425
That aH men) redy armed bee,
AH that armes may welde,
And bestirre theim with spere and shelde.'

Next morning

Anone they been) aH armed wele, [p. 95]
Twenty thousand, in hauberk*is* of stele, 3430
And oute of the Citee they bee goo
With grete noyse and booste also.

Guy exhorted his men to assail the enemies valiantly

'Lordinges,' quoth Guy, 'herken to me
Ye that here assembled bee :
The despite that they to you haue doon), 3435
For godd*is* loue, nowe thinke theron),
And assaille theim with good wille ;
For, forsothe, y shaH you telle,
The right is oure : bee not aferde,
Let eche of vs kepe his herde, 3440
And we woH mete theim with spere and shelde
In narowe patthes by the feelde.'

and not let the Saracens destroy them.

[1] MS. *hen*

For þi mete we wiþ hem[1] sone,
& strengþe ous alle wele to done;
C. 3276. & ich me self wil wiþ ȝou go; 3455
Y nil ȝou feyle neuer mo.'
Wele spekeþ now Sir Gij,
& alle þai siggeþ, 'gram*er*ci!'
To þe pas of þe hulles þai ben y-come,
& þe Sarrazins han vnder-nome, 3460
& seye þe cuntres & þe feld
Wiþ briȝt brini *and* wiþ scheld.
Þe soudan cleped after Helman,
þat deined fle for no man;
Turnbull, p. 120, l. 3087. He was coraious & gode kniȝt, 3465
& michel adouted in eu*er*ich fiȝt.
MS. fol. 125r. b. 'Sir king,' quaþ he, 'come to me.
Wiþ .xx. þousende Turkes, ich hot þe,
The Cristen ȝe schul aseyle anon.
Loke ȝe nim hem oþ*er* slen ichon; 3470
Opon ȝon hulle þai ben, lo;
Gret harm þai han ous y-do.'
Þe king forþ went wiþ his men ichon,
Wiþ strengþe þe helde þai vnder-nome;
Wiþ strengþe þai wene þe slade ou*er*-go; 3475
Ac gret combraunce hem com furst to.
C. 3300. At þe entring of þe pas Gij[2] gan to grede,
'Helpeþ, lordinges, alle our ferrede!
Biþenkeþ ȝou to winnen wele.
& hij oȝaines ȝou vndernim þe hille, 3480
Yuel ous worþ þan bi-go,
Bot god ous on þenke[3] þat al may do;
[4] *ne* on an erasure. þai ben bi-neþen[4] & we aboue.
Amidde þe pas þai ben to-gider come,
& asaileþ hem smerteliche; 3485
& to-gider we go now co*m*monliche:
Þroweþ wiþ stones, *and* bowes scheteinge,
Launces, swerdes, & dartes kerueinge,

[2] added over the line in another hand.

[3] MS. *onþenke.*

AH they sey : 'graunt mercy !
WeH speketh nowe sir' Guy.'
To the patthes they bee come :
The Sarasyns they haue vndernome. 3460
They sawe the Contrees, fryth and felde
With righte helmes, spere and shelde.

The Sowdan cleped of Tyre Elmadan' :
He ne wolde flee for noo man' ;
He was corageous and good knyght, 3465
And moche he was dredde in fight.
'Elmadan',' he seide, 'come with me.
With twenty thousand knight*is*, y bidde the,
The *crist*en' ye shaH assaille anone.
Loke that ye take theim echone.' 3470

The Soudan first sent Helman

with 20,000 Turks

against the city.

At the entre of the patthes Guy gan to ryde,
And the Sarasyns deth sore he appliede.
To his felawes he spake tho : [p. 96]
'Lordinges,' he seide, 'bere you weH ayenst yo*ur* foo.

Guy exhorted his men to defend their position on a hill,

They bee benethe and we aboue.
Lete vs vpon' theim smyte, for godd*is* loue.'
To theim they launceth egirly, 3485
And they to theim greuously.

Smiteþ wiþ swerdes & speres y-grou*n*de,
Scheteþ wiþ piles & ȝif hem deþ wounde.' 3490

Turnbull, p. 121, l. 3113.

Mani Sarrazin þer y-slawe is;
þer doþ Gij as þe riȝt wise.
Into þe narwe hij come, he*m* to lett,
Bi hundredes foure[1] þai aseyl hem sket;
Bi hundred & bi þousende,[2] 3495
þai ben þe Sarrazins quellinde.
Gij smot on þis side & on þat:
Nas þer non þat his dint sat.
¶ Ermine he smot on[3] þurch þe scheld;
Almost he feld him in þe feld. 3500
þan come Auþ*er* ou*er* þuert,
A Sarrazin modi of hert:
Ermine[4] smot him on þe helme an heyȝe,[5]
þat he cleue him to þe teþ;
Al ded he made him on þe grounde to lie. 3505
Wiþ þat come þe king of Nubie;
Toward Herhaud he come prikeinde,
& Gij hi*m* was oȝain cominde.
Wiþ grete strengþe sir Gij hi*m* smot
þat he feld him anon fot hot. 3510

MS. fol. 125v. a.

When þe douke of Tire þat y-seþ,
His men dye on so reweliche deþ
(An hond he held a dart kerueinde,
þe Cristen þer-wiþ þreteninde),
He forþ ȝede, & smot a kniȝt, 3515
þat ded he feld hi*m* anon riȝt.

Turnbull, p. 122, l. 3139.

When Gij o Warwike þat y-seye,
þiderward he drouȝ him swiþe neye:
A gode dart on hond he bar,
& to him he lau*n*ced heteliche þar. 3520
þer-wiþ he smot Ebban þe king,
þat ded he fel wiþouten letting.
þe Sarrazines hij to-heweþ & quelleþ,
Bi þe doun hij gredeþ & ȝelleþ.

[1] Read *Bihinde and bifore.*
[2] originally *thousinde*, it seems.
[3] *on* added over the line.
[4] *Herhaud?*
[5] *heyȝe* on an erasure, the last *e* being indistinct.

Many a sarasyn) there sleyn) is ; which they did
There doth Guy as the wise, y-wis.

successfully.

Guy smote down

Than come forth the king of Nubye, 3505
A stronge knyght and a manly : the king of Nubia,
Toward heraude he come priking,
And Guy him sawe well comyng.
With so grete strength to him he smote,
That dede he felled him, god it wote. 3510

and the duke of Tyre,

and others.

C. 3331. When þe soudan seye his folk dye, 3525
Bi ten, bi tvelue, in þe waye,
He cleped to hi*m* þe king of Nubye,
Þat was ful of felonie.
'Sir king,' he seyd, 'sest tow nouȝt
Hou mine men ben to deþ y-brouȝt? 3530
Descumfit & y-slawe hij beþ,
Þe bodis ded wele ȝe seþ.
Þis Cristen our men to deþ doþ;
Ac bi Cariot y swere mi noþ,
& bi Apolyn þe grete, 3535
Bi T*er*nagau*n*t, & bi Mahou*n* þe swete,
Bot we of he*m* be wreken swiþe,
No worþ y neu*er* glad no bliþe,
Bot we hem aseyle biginne,
& þe hille wiþ strengþe awinne. 3540
An hundred we ben oȝain he*m* on,
C. 3346. & al we schul hem nimen anon.'
Turnbull, p. 123, l. 3165. Þe helden þai nimeþ about strongliche,
& þe Cristen aseyl stalworþliche
At þe brode paþe & narwe also; 3545
Þe Gregeys wele werd hem þo.
On þe Cristen þai gun smite,
Þe Sarrazins, boþe miche & lite,
& our men hem werd wel
[1] the *r* added over the line. Wiþ scharpe speres & grou*n*den [1] stiel: 3550
Wiþ axes & swerdes y-grounde,
Wiþ gisarmes þai ȝif deþes wou*n*de.
¶ Þe soudan forþwiþ alder-farst
On þe Cristen smot wel fast;
MS. fol. 125v. b. On heye on helmes he hem smot 3555
Wiþ his fauchon þat wele bot.
Toȝaines Gij he smot þo,
& seyd 'war, ich-il þe slo!'
Gij he smot so ou*er* þuert,
Þat he was su*m*del y-hert; 3560

Whan the Sowdan sawe his folke so dey, 3525
By ten, by twelue lye in the wey,
He cleped the kyng of Ermonye,
That was fuH of felonye.
'King,' he seide, 'ne seest thou nought
How my men to deth bee brought? 3530

The Soudan sent the king of Nubia against them,

Bot we on theim bee awreke swithe,
Ne shaH y neuere bee gladde nor blithe.
WoH we theim assaille and fresshly begynne,
And the hylle of theim with strength wynne? 3540
An hundred we bee ayenst oon:
AH we shuH take anoon.

to take the hill.

The Greeks defend the hill

Vpon the *cristen* they gan smyte,
The Sarasyns, bothe moche and lyte,
And the *cristen* defended theim weH
With sharpe wepen grounde with steeH. 3550

desperately.

The Sowdan come than with aH haste, [p. 97]
And at the *cristen* he smote fuH faste.

The Soudan and Guy

Ayenst Guy he ganne goo,
And seide: 'yelde the, trayto*ur*, y shaH the sloo.'
To Guy he smote with grete course,
That him was some dele the worse; 3560

met in mortal fight.

Ac Gij wiþ strengþe to hi*m* smot
Wiþ his swerd þat wele bot.
Wel strong was þat ich fiȝt, = ilka
Ac þe soudan wered hi*m* wiþ miȝt.
Wharto schuld ich ȝou telle more? 3565
Þe Sarrazins ou*er*-comen wore :
C. 3355. Wele haþ Gij don þat day,
As gode kniȝt & verray.
Turnbull, p. 124, l. 3191. At a pas he houed riȝt,
As a kniȝt of gret miȝt; 3570
A gisarme he bar kerueinde,
He smot bifore & bi-hinde.
Þe Sarraȝins so he agast,
Al þat he smot to grou*n*de he cast.

His scheld he hadde forlore,
To-hewe it lay his fet bifore.
So mani Sarrazin he slouȝ þat day,
Þat ich on o*þer* ded lay; 3580
So mani to ded þer he dede,
Þat þe hepe lay to his girdel stede.
C. 3369. ¶ Who so seye þan Herhaud fiȝt,
Of a gode kniȝt ȝelp he miȝt.
A damsax he bar on his hond : 3585
Al þat he rauȝt to grou*n*de he wond;
Sarrazins he slouȝ mo þan sexti,
& Gij an hundred & fourti.
Herhaud þat day so sore swong,
Þat þurch his mouþe þe fom it spro*n*g; 3590
[1] MS. *alto hewe* Al to-hewe [1] was his helme,
Þe blod ran out als a welme.
What schuld y make tale muche?
Þe Sarrazins þai slowen strongliche;
Ac euer he was gode, apliȝt, 3595
Gij of Warwike michel of miȝt,

And Guy with strength to him smote
With his swerde that fuH harde bote.

Guy did well.

To a place he wente, and houed there:

A Gesharme in his honde he did bere. He fought amid
The Sarasyns so there he agaste:
AH that he smote to grounde felle faste.
So faste the sarasyns him leyde vpon, 3575
That his horse they slowe he sate vpon.
His shelde also he hath lore:
To-hewe it laye his fete before.

a heap of the dead.

So many sarasyns he to deth dede,
That they ley on hepe to his girdeH stede.
Who that had seen heraude than fighte, Herhaud also
Of a good knyght he speke myghte.
A deuonyssh axe he bare in his honde: 3585
AH that he raughte to grounde wende. did prodigies.

Heraude so sore that daye swanke,
That thurgh his mouthe the fome sanke. 3590

And he that was so good a knyght, 3595
Guy of Warrewik of grete myght, Guy did most.

Turnbull, p. 125, l. 3217.
More dede þan ani oþer :
His stroke was heui so a foþer.
Gij and his feren also
Als lyouns þai fouȝten þo, 3600
MS. fol. 126r. a.
& the Gregeys forþ wiþ hem,
C. 3382.
þai wered hem as douhti men.
Weynes & cartes þai han y-nome
Mo þan fiften þousende atte frome.
Y-ioined hij han þe gret piles, 3605
Ginnes þai made on selcouþe wise,
Sum piles scharpe kerueinde,
Al aboute so mani stondinde,
Þat ich ne can þe noumbre telle,
Noi*þer* in rime no in spelle. 3610
Þer nas man þat þer neye come,
Þat he ne was to-corwen anon.
So griseliche be þe engins,
For to sle þe Sarrazines,
In ich half y-sett arawe, 3615
1 *r* added over the line.
Scharpe soules doun of þe hulle y-drawe.[1]
Þer-mid þai hewe þe gret stonis,
Bi-hewe quarre for þe nonis,
So gret so tventie men miȝt drawe,
To slen hem of þe heþen lawe. 3620
Swiche a þousende for-smite*n* þai be,
Þat neu*er* after schullen y-the ;
Turnbull, p. 126, l. 3243.
Wel iuel hem is bifallen þare,
C. 3404.
Ded þai ben wiþ sorwe & care.
Wharto schuld ich tale telle? 3625
þe soudan lepe on hors ful snelle.
Gret onde he hadde to Gyoun,
& to Herhaud, his compaynoun,
For hij han slawe so fel of his.
He sat on an hors of p*ris*, 3630
Wiþ gret hete he smot to Gij,
Opon his helme, sikerly,

Euere smote to oon) and other':
His strokes were heuy as a vother'.
And Guyes felowes also — His companions
As lyoñs they foughte thoo, 3600
And their' souldiers with theim [p. 98] — and the Greeks also acted like doughty men.
Defended theim as men).

They constructed engines

to slay the Saracens,

of whom thousands perished.

With that come ayene the Sowdan), 3625
And with him many an hethen man). — The Soudan
He bare grete hatrede to Guyoun),
And to heraude, his compaignyon).
Guy was ware of his comyng':
To horse he lepe withoute letting'. 3630
So harde the sowdan) smote to Guy — smote Guy,
Vpon) the helme, sikirly,

Þat he feld þat o quarter.
To Gij he seyd a bismer:
'Y-sestow, lord? bi Apolin, 3635
Þat was a strok of a Sarrazin!'
Gij to þe soudan smot þo,
His helme no was him worþ a slo:
Resares euen forþ þe breyn
Helme & flesse he carf wiþ meyn. 3640
Þan he seyd to him a bismer:
'Mahoun halp þe litel þer!
Bodi & soule no nouȝt þer-of
No is nouȝt worþ a lekes clof.
MS. fol. 126r. b. Hou so it go of mi wounde, 3645
Of Mahoun þou hast litel help y-founde.
Er þou scorndest me,
Of mi wounde þou madest þi gle:
Turnbull, p. 127, l. 3269. Leche gode schal ich haue,
Þat mi wounde schal to hele drawe; 3650
Þou hast a croun schauen to þe bon;
Tomerwe þou miȝt sing anon.
Wele þou þouȝtest to ben a prest,
When þou of swiche a bischop order berst!'
Now biginneþ þat gret fiȝt; 3655
Bi þre, bi four, adoun riȝt,
Þe Sarrazins ben ou*er*-come,
C. 3405. Oway fleinde þai ben some.
Þe niȝt comeþ, þe day is go,
Þe Sarrazins han ful michel wo; 3660
For so mani y-slawe þer be
(So seyd þe folk of þat cuntre),
Þat men miȝt wade ou*er* þe scho hem
In þe blod þat of hem kem.
So miche folk þer was y-slawe þo, 3665
Þat fiftene forlong men miȝt go,
Þat þei he kept him neu*er* so,
He most nedes opon men go,

That of his creest he felled a q*ua*rter,
And to Guy he seide in a busemer':
'What seist thou, lording? by Appolyn,
That was a stroke of a Sarasyn.'
And Guy to the Sowdan smote so,
That his helme auailled him not a sloo:
Streigħt euen forth to the brayne
Helme and flesshe he karf with mayne.
And tho he seide in a busemer':
'Mahounde helped the liteħ there.

and twitted him of the wound,

but Guy bettered the blow,

How so it fare of my wounde,
In Mahounde thou hast liteħ helpe founde.
Righ̄t nowe thou scorned me,
And of my wounde thou madest thy glee:
Lechyng good shaħ y haue,
That shaħ my wounde hele and saue;
And thou hast a crowne shorne to the boon:
Now thou may synge masse before noon.
Thou maist bee nowe Mahound*is* preest,
Whan [thou] suche a bisshopp̄s hode werest.'

and the reproach also.

Thanne were the Sarasyns ou*er*ecome, [p. 99]
Awey fleyng they wente som̄e.

The Saracens are vanquished.

When night came,

So many sarasyns sleyn there bee,
That fiftene forlange men migħt see
Men wade aboue the hemme of their shoon̄
In the blode that of theim coom.
So moche slaugħter in eche side was thoo,
That .xv. myles men must goo

the dead bodies covered 15 furlongs.

Oþer on fot, oþer on hond,
Oþer opon arm coruen wiþ brond. 3670
¶ Wiþ þat come an amiral prikeinge,
Newe dubbed he was, wiþ-outen lesing ;
To þe soudan he is y-come,
þurch þe bodi he haþ woundes some.
Turnbull, p. 128, l. 3295. 'Sir,' he seyd, 'hennes we go : 3675
No sestow al our folk slo ?
Bi þousendes þou sest hem to deþ ligge ;
Our godes ous hateþ, for soþe to sigge.
þou sest Mahoun ne Apolin
Be nouȝt worþ þe brestel of a swin. 3680
Anon riȝtes wiþdrawe þou þe,
& to þi pauiloun þou fle ;
Alle þe wounded þou do wiþ þe lede ;
Ȝete þai may þe help & rede.
þi rereban þou do of-sende ; 3685
To awreke [þe] þou haue in mende.'
Anon þai hem wiþdrawe and ben ouer-come ;
Sori þai ben alle & some.
MS. fol. 126v. a. þe soudan dede biforn him bring
Alle his godes, wiþouten lesing : 3690
Toward hem he is wel wroþ,
Do he wil hem harm & loþ :
[1] ȝe on an erasure. 'A ȝe[1] fals godes vnwreste !
[2] MS. *alither* Sone ȝou tit a liþer[2] feste.
Oȝain ous ȝe ben of wicked mode : 3695
Schame ȝe don ous & no gode.
Ȝe don ous alder-werst to spede
When þat we han mest nede.
Fy, fy,' he seyd, 'on [þe], Apolin !
Turnbull. p. 129, l. 3321. þou schalt haue wel iuel fin, 3700
& þou, Ternagaunt, also :
Michel schame schal com ȝou to ;
& þou, Mahoun, her alder lord,
þou nart nouȝt worþ a tord !

Either vp fote, or vp honde,
Or vp man) sleyn) with̄ bronde.

An Emir, himself wounded, came riding to the Soudan,

and advised him to withdraw to his pavilion.

This done,

THOO DUDE the Soudan) before hy*m* bringe
AH his godd*is*, withoute lesyng: 3690
Toward theim he was fuH wrothe.
Eu*er*y dele he to-rende his clothe,
And seide: 'ye false godd*is* vntruste,
Shame ye doo vs and grete bruste.
Ayenst vs ye bee of wikked moode: 3695
Sorowe ye doo vs, and noo goode.
Whan we haue to you moste nede,
Than doo ye vs worste spede.
Fye, fye on the, thou Appolyn)!
Thou shalt haue a fuH euyH fyn), 3700
And thou, Termagant, also:
Moche sorowe com̄e the to;
And thou, Mahound, their' aller' Lorde,
Thou art not worthe a mouse torde!

the Soudan ordered his gods to be brought.

He reproached them with ingratitude,

Þer-fore þou it schalt abigge 3705
Wiþ staues gret opon þi rigge.'

So he gan his godes to cloute,
Þat þe erþe dined aboute. 3710
Her armes & legges he to-tiȝt,
& cleped hem wroches anon riȝt:
'Godenes in ȝou nas neu*er* y-founde,
No more miȝt þan in an hounde.'
Bi þe fet he hem out drouȝ, 3715
And dede hem schame riȝt anouȝ.
Gij dede clepe her cheueteyn
Wiþ gode will & hert feyn:
C. 3450. 'Lordinges,' he seyd, 'god y-þonked be!
Feir grace so habbe we, 3720
Þat þe Sarrazins ben ou*er*come.
Wende we to þe cite atte frome.'
& when þai ben comen oȝen,
To þemp*er*our welcom þai ben,
& nameliche Gij, þe gode kniȝt, 3725
Mest was worþschiped i*n* þat fiȝt.
¶ When þat y-seye Morgadour,
Þat steward was wiþ þemp*er*our,
Turnbull, p. 130, l. 3347. Þat Gij biwreyed vnwrastliche,
Þat þemp*er*our loued so miche, 3730
He bigan for to asay
Hou he miȝt Gij bi-tray.
O felonie he haþ hi*m* bi-þouȝt;
Of swiche no haue ȝe herd nouȝt:
MS. fol. 126v. b. He þouȝt in his wille þo, 3735
Þat Gij o message schuld go.
In swiche þouȝt & swiche wille
An while he held him stille;
Anon he went to þemp*er*our,
& seyd, 'sir, p*ar* amour, 3740

Therfor' thou shalt it abigge 3705
With harde strokes vpon' thy rigge.'
He toke a good hawthorne, that by him dud ligge, [p. 100]
And beleyde his godd*is* wombe and Rigge.
So he beganne his godd*is* cloute, clouted them,
That grounde deoned all aboute. 3710
Their' armes and legges he all to-twighte, broke their legs and arms,
And cleped theim wrecches of vnmyghte:
'In you was neu*er*e goodnesse founde,
Ne nomore might than in an hounde.'
By the fete he theim oute drowe, 3715 and cast them out.
And did theim shame enowe.
Guye cleped to him his chiefenteyn', Guy
With good wille to him gan' seyn':
'Lorde god, thanked he bee! and his men
A Faire grace nowe haue we, 3720
That the sarasyns bee thus ou*er*ecome.
Wende we to the Citee nowe sone.' returned to the city.
Whan' they to the Cytee were come ayene,
To the Emperou*r* welcome they been',
And namely Guy, the good knyght, 3725 He was welcomed and worshipped by all.
Most was worshipped, and that was right.
Whan' that sawe Morgadour', Only Morgadour
That Styward was with the Emperou*r*,
That Guy was come home thoo,
And that the Emperou*r* loued him so, 3730
Than he bethoughte him, the sothe to sey, still plotted his ruin.
How he might Guy best betraye.
On felonye he bethoughte thoo,

That Guy shulde on message goo.

Thanne he seide to the Emperour': [p. 101] He advised the Emperor
'Sir,' quoth he, 'paramour', 3740

Þe soudan haþ his folk y-sent: 3745
Into al peyni his sond is sent.
Þer nis noiþ*er* ȝing no eld
Þat armes may bere & wepe*n* weld,
Alle he is haueþ of-sent,
Þe to bisege verrament. 3750
¶ To hi*m* þou þi sond sende,
Alle þi wille, word & ende.'

'Who,' he seyd, 'durst þider wende?' 3755
'Sir Gij, a kniȝt hardi & hende
Of þine house, & þat y plight:
Gij of Warwike of gret miȝt,
Herhaud of Arderne, þ*at* oþ*er* best:
On hem tveye ȝe mow ȝou trest. 3760
Turnbull, p. 131, l. 3373. To þe soudan þou sende þine kniȝtes bold,
C. 3500. & say þou wilt wiþ hi*m* a day hold
Of acord in swiche manere.'
'Sir steward,' seyd þemp*er*ere,
'Toward Gij þou berst iuel wille: 3765
He no schal nouȝt go; þerof be stille.
Ac mine barouns ichil of-sende,
& wite who wille þider wende.'
His barouns he haþ of-sent:
Ou*er* alle his lond þai ben y-went, 3770
Þat þai schuld to þemp*er*our wende.
To hem he seyd, 'mi leue frende,
Ich wold sende to the soudan,
ȝif ich wist eu*er* bi wham.
To hi*m* to sende ich am i*n* wille, 3775
Wiþ hi*m* to acord loude oþ*er* stille,

Yf thy wille bee, herken̄ me :
Good counsaille y shaɫɫ yiue the.'
'Now lete see,' quoth̄ the Emperour̄.
'Vnderstonde me,' quoth Morgadour̄.
'The sowdan̄ hath̄ for his folke sente :
In-to aɫɫ paynym̄ the sonde is wente.

So moche folke he hath̄ for-sente,
The to besege verament.
To him, y rede, thou sende thy sonde
In sauacion̄ of the and aɫɫ thy londe,
That loue and pees bee betwene you two,
Tiɫɫ aɫɫ this rancour̄ bee a-goo.'
'Who durste,' quoth̄ the Emperour, 'thider wende ?
'Sir, a good knygh̄t hardy and hen le
Of thy house, y the aplighte,
Guy of Warrewik of grete migh̄te,
And heraude, that other the beste :
In theim two thou may weɫɫ truste.'

to send a messenger to the Soudan,

naming Guy and Herhaud.

The Emperour seide : 'Morgadour, bee stille :
Toward Guy thou hast euyl wille.
He ne shaɫɫ on suche message wende,
Bot for my baron̄s y shaɫɫ sende.'

The Emperor, with some doubt, assented,

HIS BAROUNS tho he dud for-sende :
Ouere all his londe his sonde gan̄ wende,
That they shuld to the Emperour com̄e.
To theim he seide : 'my frendes aɫɫ and som̄e,
I shulde sende to the Sowdan̄,
Yf y wiste euere by wham̄.
With him to accorde y am in wille, [p. 102]
Yf that ye woɫɫ assente thertille,

and assembled his barons

ȝif ani of ȝou so hardi were,
þat to him þe message bere.'
When þe*mper*our had seyd his resoun,
Þer nas noiþ*er* kniȝt no baroun 3780
Þat hi*m* a word answerd þo:
Nas þ*er* non þe message durst do.
¶ A baroun of þe benche aros:
Sir Tristor his name was.

MS. fol. 127r. a. C. 3555. 'Sir emp*er*our, vnder-stond me, 3785
For leyer no schal ich holden be;
Turnbull, p. 132, l. 3399. For ich it sigge for gret loue,
& þine worþschipe to held aboue:
Fif thousende siþe haue he maugre
Þat þe *con*seyl ȝaf to þe! 3790
For he þe loueþ riȝt nouȝt
Þat in þat wille þe haþ y-brouȝt,
Þat þou to hi*m* ȝelde scholdest,
[1] *þat?* Bot[1] þou þi sonde sende woldest.
No þenkestow nouȝt of þat baroun 3795
Þat was of so gret renoun,
Hou þou sendest him to?
Oȝain no come he neu*er* mo.
He þe sent þe heued wiþ-out*en* more,
No durst neuer eft non com þore; 3800
In þe world is kniȝt non
Þat þe message durst don.
C. 3565. For arwe no sigge ich it no-wiȝt:
ȝif in min armes were so gret miȝt
Also ich hadde, & as ȝong were 3805
As ich was hennes an hundred ȝere,
Þis ich message don ich wold,
For drede of deþ lete y nold.
Ac icham now a neld man,
Alle mine miȝtes ben now gan; 3810
It is now gon mo þan fifti ȝer
Þat ich on rigge hauberk ber.

Yf any of you so hardy were,
That durste from vs our' message bere.'
Whan the Emperour had seide his reeson),
Ther was neither knyght nor baron) 3780
That oon) worde him answerd,
Bot as dome men) sate ah aferde.

to ask who would take the message.

Sir Tristor

opposed

the Emperor's proposal,

for no former messenger had ever returned.

He said it not for cowardice,

Turnbull, p. 133, l. 3425.

Ich[1] ȝou sigge for soþe y-wis,
To lese a good man gret harm it is,
For ȝif he ani sendeþ þider, 3815
His heued hi*m* schal comen hider.
Now ich haue mi wille y-sede;
Now ȝiue anoþ*er* better rede.'
When Tristor hadde y-seyd þis,
Wiþ-outen ani oþ*er* abod y-wis, 3820
Þer nas nouȝt on, litel no miche,
Þat durst speke sikerliche.
Gij of Warwike vp arist:
'Sir emp*er*our, bi mi lord I*es*u[2] Crist,
Þis message ichil afo, 3825
& it þurch godes help do.'
Seyd þemp*er*our, 'þat schaltow nouȝt:
Þider to go haue þou no þouȝt;
Ich it[3] dede mine men to fond,
To whom ich miȝt trust in mi lond.' 3830
Þan answerd Gij wel snelle,
'For soþe, sir, leten y nille,
Þat ich þe message wil do,
To dye er ich þennes go.'
Wiþ þat he went out of þe halle. 3835
Þe Gregeys siked among hem alle,
'God! what Gij is noble baroun!
I*es*u, þat suffred passioun,
Saue hi*m* fram cumberment,
& hi*m* oȝain bring i*n* sauement.' 3840
Gij cam to his in in a stou*n*de,
His felawes droupeing he founde.
'Lordinges,' he seyd, 'hou is it now?
Almiȝti god y bi-teche ȝou.'
'Sir,' quaþ Herhaud, 'ich-il go 3845
Bi þine wille wiþ þe also.'
Gij answerd, 'so no schal it be.
Icham y-go: biddeþ for me.'

[1] *jich*, but the *j* underdotted.

[2] *jhus* originally, but the *s* underdotted.

MS. fol. 127r. b.

[3] MS. *ichit*

C. 3600.

Turnbull, p. 134, l. 3451.

but to spare a good man.

When he finished

And ther' was noon), litiH ne moche,
That oon) worde spake sikirliche.
GUYE of Warrewik than vpryste : Guy
'Sir Emperou*r*, by my lorde Criste,
This message,' quoth he thoo, 3825 offered to go.
'With godd*is* helpe y shaH it weH doo.'
The Emperou*r* seide : 'that shalt thou nought :
Thider' goo haue thou noo thought.'

Thanne answerd Guy, as y you telle :
'By god, sir, y it leue nelle,
Bot y woH this message doo,
To dye or y thense goo.'
With that he toke his leeue of theim aH, 3835
And wente him forthe oute of the haH. How the Greeks sighed while admiring Guy.
For him they bidde, knyght and baron),
To god, that suffred passion),
Shuld saue him fro combringe,
And him ayene sauf bringe. 3840
Guy come to his ynne in a stounde,
His felawes he hath aH drowping founde. Guy's fellows
'What, lording*is*,' he seide, 'how is it nowe?
AH-mighti god y beteche you.'
'Sir,' quoth heraude, 'y shaH with the goo; [p. 103] 3845 wished to accompany him,
For, yf thou dye, y shaH also.'
Guy answerd : 'so may it not bee. but he would go alone.
I shaH goo : pray thou for me.'

He oxed his armes hastiliche,
And men es hi*m* brou3t sikerliche. 3850
Hosen of iren he haþ on drawe,
Non better[1] nar bi þo dawe.
In a strong hauberk he gan hi*m* schrede,
Who so it wered, þe ded no þurt hi*m* drede.
An helme he haþ on him don: 3855
Better no wered neuer kni3t non;
The sercle[2] of gold þer-on was wrou3t,
For half a cite no worþ it bou3t:
So mani stones þ*er*-in were,
Þat were of vertu swiþe dere. 3860
Seþþe he gert hi*m* wiþ a brond
Þat was y-made i*n* eluene lond.
His scheld about his nek he tok,
On hors he lepe wiþ-out*en* stirop,
On hond he nam a spere kerueinde, 3865
Out of þe cite he was rideinde.
Alle þat weren of þat cite
For him wel sori weren he;
No wene þai neu*er* his 3ain-cominge,
Alle þai wene þ*er* his endinge. 3870
C. 3635. Now is Gij in þe ri3t way
Toward þe Sarrazins, y say,
Wele y-armed on his stede,
A launce he bar gode at nede.
Smerteliche he dede hi*m* i*n* þe ways, 3875
Ouer þe dounes & þe valeys
To the Sarrazins y-comen he is,
& her pauilou*n*s he seþ y-wis.
A real pauiloun he þ*er* seye
Wiþ an eren of gold an heye. 3880
Þat was þe soudans[3] pauiloun:
Haue he Cristes malisoun!
In-to þe pauiloun Gij hi*m* wond,
& an hast þ*er* he fond

[1] *bertter*, but the first *r* underdotted.

[2] the *r* added over the line.

Turnbull, p. 135, l. 3477.

MS. fol. 127v. a.

[3] *soudanes*, but the *e* underdotted.

His armes he asked hastely,
And men theim broughte gentilly. 3850

He armed himself,

Than he girde him with his bronde,
That was made in eluyssh londe.
A sheelde aboute his swere he toke,
To horse he leepe withoute stirope, leapt on his horse,
In his hande he bare his spere keruyng, 3865
And oute of the Citee he wente ryding. and left the city,
Alle the folke of the Citee
For him wepte for pitee, amid universal lamentation.
And preyde hertly for his gayne-comyng,
And that the sowdan shuld haue euyl ending. 3870

Nowe is Guy in the wey
Towardis the sarasyns, as y you sey,
Welle armed vpon his stede,
A launce he bare fulle good at nede.

So nyghe the sarasyns come he is,
That he their pauylon sawe y-wis.
To the Sowdans pauylon he gan aspie
With an heron of golde stondiñg on highe. 3880 By a golden eagle he knew the Soudan's pavilion.

In-to that pauylon Guy is went
On horsebak, y telle you, verament.

Alle atte mete *þat þer* was, 3885
& nouȝt michel noise *þer* nas.
At þe heye bord eten kinges ten,
Þat alle were Gyes fomen.
Þan seyd Gij þe Englisse,
'Vnderstond to mi speche: 3890

Turnbull, p. 136, l. 3503.

Þilke lord þat woneþ an heye,
Þat al þing walt fer & neye,
& in þe rode lete hi*m* pini,
Al cristen men to saui,[1]
& in þe se made þe sturioun, 3895
So ȝif ȝou alle his malisoun,
& alle þilk þat ich here se,
Þat mis-bileued men be;
& þe at þe first, sir soudan,
Cristes wreche þe come opan! 3900
Yuel fure breninde fast þe opon,
& cleue þi brest doun to þi ton!
For icham Gij ȝe mow wel[2] se,
Yuel mot ȝe alle y-the!
Vnder-stond, treitour, mi resoun: 3905
Haue þou Cristes malisoun,
& alle þilke forþ mitt te,
Þat ich her[3] about þe se.
Þe heye god þat is ful of miȝt
Binim ȝou ȝour limes & ȝour siȝt! 3910
Bi me þe sent word þemp*er*our Garioun,
C. 3660. Þat miȝti men haþ i*n* his bandoun,
Þurch wham þou art y-brouȝt to scho*n*d,
& hoteþ þe wende out of his lond,
For here has tow no riȝt. 3915
Finde a Sarrazin oþ*er* a kniȝt,
& he schal anoþ*er* finde,
Þat schal deray[ne] his riȝt kinde.
Y schal wiþ þe glotoun fiȝt;
& ȝif þine haue þe more miȝt, 3920

[1] *sauei*, but the *e* underdotted.

[2] *l* added over the line with another ink.

[3] *r* added over the line (with another ink?).

MS. fol. 127v. b. Turnbull, p. 137, l. 3529.

Date Due

MAR 10 56	C6210		
MAR 24 '56	C6210		
MAY 13 '57	A1792		
	A1792		
SEP - '58	Regan (fac.)		
APR 20 '60	UF6516		
APR 25 '63			
	MAY 16 1968	SEP. - 1971	
JUL 23 1969			
	JAN 22 2004		

JAN 1950

BOSTON COLLEGE
3 9031 01333773 8
226955

PR1119 .E5 No. 42
The Romance of Guy of Warwick
Ill Simmons
226955

Guy of Warwick
PR1119
.E5 # 42

Boston College Library
Chestnut Hill 67, Mass.

Books may be kept for two weeks unless a shorter time is specified.

Two cents a day is charged for each 2-week book kept overtime; 25 cents a day for each overnight book.

If you cannot find what you want, inquire at the delivery desk for assisstance.

12-49